

**Is Following Jesus Necessary?  
Are You Sure You Are A Christian?**

**Benefit from years of intense biblical study, and save time.....**



Chris Waugh

If you're like me, you have definitely heard the unsaved proclaim, "There are too many hypocrites in the church." Some of the most immoral people I have known over the years claim to be Christians, so what went wrong? Through the guidance of the Holy Spirit, this book seeks to answer this question by solving the issues that have dominated the Christian church far too long.

The world can do without another sermon and book deeming repentance, discipleship, and Jesus' Lordship as evil. I have also experienced first-hand "religious" bullies campaign against the tireless efforts of the late Dr. Billy Graham, all the while wishing that I could stand up for him. The sermons and writings of Billy Graham have been a wealth of information to me over the years, but as I study their descriptions of repentance, discipleship, and Jesus' Lordship, I see how their critics are quick to degrade them. Not only would I like to shed light on these teachings, but I believe the Holy Spirit has gifted me with the ability to biblically and clearly break down repentance, discipleship, and Jesus' Lordship and their relation to Jesus' work on the cross and His resurrection in a way that, to my knowledge, hasn't ever been explained. Readers craving detail and hungry for answers should be blessed by what the Lord has revealed. I desperately needed a book like this when I was young in the faith. It would have saved me many grueling, strenuous years of study. For example, my passion to this day is to see people receive Christ, but presenting the gospel has been a major challenge for me, especially knowing that people are lurking around ready to condemn me for witnessing incorrectly. (Although, I'm thankful for those trials - Romans 8:28.) Chapters 26-33 of this book were produced as a result, and I believe they will be a valuable tool in helping Christians witness in various situations and silence critics ready to condemn.

There have been Christian books over the years that have literally been lifesavers, but you're getting ready to see what makes this book particularly unique. Many books have similar statements such as, "You need to be willing to yield your will to follow and serve Jesus; there needs to be a total surrender and commitment of your life to Him." Also, that is usually all the explanation you get. I have spent many painstaking hours trying to understand statements like that and how to apply them. If you can relate to this, your mind should now be at ease.

The vision of this book is to save the reader time and avoid guess work. An example of this from chapter one is, "Chapters 6 and 7 of this book reveals how an unsaved person eternally benefits by being willing to begin following (imitating and obeying) Jesus after they pray or make

a decision to become a Christian. (For an example of how to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.) Please notice that I “did not” say that after an unsaved person follows Jesus, they become a Christian. An unsaved person needs to be consciously or unconsciously (see the 6<sup>th</sup> point of chapter 6 of this book for more explanations) “ready and willing” to begin following Jesus (for the rest of their life) after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian, then their heart is prepared to receive Jesus (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of this book) and be saved by asking Jesus into their heart, believing that Jesus is their Savior, or trusting Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase their sins and let them into heaven and believing He arose from the dead, etc. **There is a big difference.**”

This book also doesn't make final statements such as, “Now that you're a Christian, your new life is identified by love and service for others.” Instead, readers get statements such as this from chapter nine after they have prayed to accept Jesus as their Savior, “Weeks, months, and years after you have trusted Jesus' shed blood to erase your sins and believed He arose from the dead, you should "Examine yourselves, whether ye be in the faith; prove your own selves. Know ye not your own selves, how that Jesus Christ is in you, except ye be reprobates (not really saved)?" (2 Corinthians 13:5). In addition to having confidence that your sins are forgiven, if you try to and are increasingly able to live the way the previous paragraphs explained, you will have examined yourself, and you will have passed the test! Many, very important Bible verses will apply to you if you are living this way.”

Another convenient example from this book is the following paragraph from chapter one:

“Obviously, actions such as lying, stealing, and killing are sins (The 10 Commandments), and if we have broken one, we are guilty of all (James 2:10). In spite of this, it is also a sin when someone spends their time, other than work or school, etc., **“doing” things that do not involve God** instead of **“doing” the type of things explained in chapter 39 of this book. It seems that multitudes believe they can get saved and continue to live the same way they always have, with the exception of going to church every Sunday morning. Although, the Bible doesn't teach that.** (Galatians 5:24-25, "And they that are Christ's (going to heaven) have crucified the flesh with the affections and lusts (loving to and wanting to sin). If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit.") (Galatians 6:8, "For he that soweth to his flesh (spends their time “doing” things that do not involve God) shall of the flesh reap corruption (go to hell); but he

that soweth to the Spirit (**spends their time each day “doing” the type of things explained in chapter 39 of this book**) shall of the Spirit reap life everlasting (**go to heaven**.)") When someone is "born again" or is a "new" creature in Christ (2 Corinthians 5:17), they will spend their time differently than they did before they were "born again" or a "new" creature in Christ. **There will be a big change over time.**"

Instead of getting a general explanation for 'he that soweth to the Spirit', you're able to have a clear understanding of what it's referring to (**spends their time each day “doing” the type of things explained in chapter 39 of this book**). References to chapters like this are a recurring theme and can definitely come in handy.

One of the major themes of this book is assurance of salvation. For those young in the faith or don't possess a lot of biblical knowledge, the Bible can be very confusing. For example, if a professing Christian is reading chapter eighteen and discovers they have been consistently guilty of several sins listed in Ephesians 5:1–7, even though they've made a decision to accept Christ as their Savior, they may ask, "Does this mean I'm not really a Christian?" This is where being directed to chapter ten will help.

I've heard people say things such as, "I believe in Jesus and have prayed to become a Christian, but I'm not a Christian." Another example is, "I went forward in a church service to get saved and have been baptized, but I don't live like a Christian."

Basically, people like this believed Jesus was their Savior, but they didn't repent or had no desire to stop committing sins on purpose (Colossians 2:11) after they told God that they believed Jesus was their Savior. As a result, their hearts weren't prepared to receive Jesus. (For information on this, see chapters 1-9 of this book.)

Tragically, people like this are promised by pastors that they are going to heaven. Instead of reading 1 John or material that's covered in chapter 10 of this book, their assurance of salvation came from the fact that they prayed a prayer years ago, even if their sinful lifestyles basically remained. So, when people like the ones explained in the two previous paragraphs know deep down that they aren't really Christians, they think back to pastors promising them that they are going to heaven because they prayed or made decisions to accept Jesus as their Savior or trusted Jesus' shed blood to give them salvation.

There're pastors who strongly oppose people praying or making decisions to become Christians the second time. So, when people who aren't really Christians continue to sin, and are told by pastors that they shouldn't worry and that it's no big deal, the people believe the pastors' words. The truth is, that these people will never be able to break their sinful lifestyles, because they have no power or ability to do so (see Romans 6:1-23). If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, and they are able to give up their sins more and more overtime, they gain assurance that they have really become a Christian (Romans 6:1-23; 2 Corinthians 3:18). Pastors who are against this, need to correct themselves.

Therefore, if these people don't pray or make decisions to become Christians the second time, they aren't going to heaven, because they didn't become Christians the first time they made decisions to do so. In the Bible, it's clear that Demas, who served with the apostle Paul but later went back to his old lifestyle, made a decision to become a Christian, but didn't go to heaven unless he made a decision to become a Christian again (2 Timothy 4:10).

People may claim, "You don't have read a book in order to know how to become a Christian; reading a gospel tract will suffice." I agree that gospel tracts have seemed to have led many to the Lord and come in handy, but you don't have to read this entire book to understand how to become a Christian either; a quick turn to chapter 9 of this book will explain this. A downfall to gospel tracts; however, is that a general explanation doesn't work for everyone. For example, I'm confident that the Rich Young Man in Mark 10:17-25 would have easily made a decision to believe that Jesus was his Savior if he read a general gospel tract from today. If you read point number 1 of chapter 6 of this book, you should see that everyone's heart isn't equally prepared to receive Jesus as their Savior, and as a result, the message Christians should present to non-Christians should be directed at preparing their hearts to truly receive Jesus. Chapters 26-33 of this book provide practical outlines that Christians can use to help meet this all-important goal.

Simply put, this book should give you complete understandings of the most crucial Bible topics. The Christian community and those seeking true purpose will appreciate this fresh, new take God wants to present. We all learn differently, and this book seeks to take everyone by the hand and lead.

It is my prayer that through these pages you will find the answers to the issues that need to be resolved and have full assurance of your salvation. May God greatly bless you with biblical

knowledge and give you the ability to take Jesus' message to this lost and dying world that has drifted far from the Bible. **If you are interested in becoming a Christian right now, please see chapter 9 or 41 of this book. Also, if you belong to a church that uses confirmation, you should be able to benefit from the message in this book as well. Another note before you begin reading is that when you see the term 'saved', it's referring to someone who is a Christian or needs to become a Christian, etc.**

This book's message has a lot to say about your personal walk with the Lord and how to know you are going to heaven. Trying to figure out if those who have passed on made it to heaven can be confusing, especially if they prayed or made decisions to become Christians but weren't very successful at living the Christian lifestyle or abandoned the Christian lifestyle at some time. Concluding that these people didn't go heaven isn't the right mindset to have. First John 5:16-17 implies that some Christians die early because they fail to repent of certain sins, and as a result, God ends their lives early. These Christians still go to heaven, though (Jude 1:24). God ends their lives to keep other Christians from being persuaded to sin in those ways (Acts 5:1-11; 1 Corinthians 5:5-7; 11:30). So, don't worry about these things; instead, be concerned with how the Bible teaches that Christians living now should live.

**Before diving into this book's chapters, the following are five important and dominate takeaways - Other than explaining how we can become Christians, live the Christian lifestyle, and gain assurance of our salvation, this book biblically tackles the sometimes gleeful, proud, popular, and false notion that a person will go to hell if they try to explain to someone how they can become a Christian and mention anything other than that they must believe that Jesus died on the cross for their sins, was buried, and arose from the dead. This book also explains the all-important difference between earning your salvation and biblical repentance.**

Be sure to check out and pass on to others the typed sermons and Bible teachings by Chris at this website - <http://chriswaug5.wix.com/sermons>

Chris has also started writing his next book entitled *Extremely Important Bible Verses Explained*. The goal of this book is to clearly teach how someone can obey passages of the Bible, beginning at Matthew and ending at Revelation, by using the same unique outline/format presented in this book. The passages that will be covered are those that explain how someone can become a

Christian, live the Christian lifestyle, and have assurance of their salvation. This gives readers the opportunity to receive overly clear and complete explanations of life-changing Bible verses that aren't covered in this book. As Chris continues to write this, you can see his progress for free at this website - <http://chriswaug5.wix.com/newtestament>

## **DEDICATION**

I dedicate this book to my dad, who is my best friend. I love having opportunities to serve the Lord and study God's Word with him. My dad has done a lot for me, especially by providing the Bible based resources for my learning and the encouragement and help to reach millions with the good news of Jesus.

## CONTENTS

Title Page

Introduction

Dedication

Chapter 1: A Message to Churches and Professing Christians

Chapter 2: Something Is Seriously Wrong

Chapter 3: Jesus' Work on the Cross

Chapter 4: The Tragedy of Not Counting the Cost

Chapter 5: Does the Bible Contradict Itself?

Chapter 6: Is Being Willing to Follow Jesus Necessary?

Chapter 7: Is Following "From This Moment On" Necessary?

Chapter 8: Which Road Are You On?

Chapter 9: Beginning a Brand-New Life

Chapter 10: How to Know You Are Really Saved

Chapter 11: The Lifestyle of a Christian

Chapter 12: Evidence Through The Holy Spirit

Chapter 13: Controlling Your Speech

Chapter 14: What Exactly is Love?

Chapter 15: Trials

Chapter 16: The Parable of the Sower

Chapter 17: The Sermon on the Mount

Chapter 18: Commandments That Can't be Ignored

[Chapter 19: How Christians Should Handle Their Money](#)

[Chapter 20: Is Jesus' Lordship Biblical?](#)

[Chapter 21: The Defining Marks of a Christian](#)

[Chapter 22: All About Jesus](#)

[Chapter 23: TV and Music](#)

[Chapter 24: How to Council with Others](#)

[Chapter 25: An Effective Closing Message to Use](#)

[Chapter 26: Preparing to Witness](#)

[Chapter 27: How to Witness in Urgent Situations](#)

[Chapter 28: Witnessing During Planned Visits](#)

[Chapter 29: People Who Say They Have Been Saved](#)

[Chapter 30: People Who Say They Haven't Been Saved](#)

[Chapter 31: How to Witness to People of Different Beliefs](#)

[Chapter 32: Witnessing by Using the Internet](#)

[Chapter 33: How to Defend Yourself When Witnessing](#)

[Chapter 34: "Good" Works Are Not a "Bad" Thing](#)

[Chapter 35: How to Defeat Satan](#)

[Chapter 36: Are There Sins That Can't Be Forgiven?](#)

[Chapter 37: How to have Your Prayers Answered](#)

[Chapter 38: Can Salvation Be Lost?](#)

[Chapter 39: Reference Chapter](#)

[Chapter 40: No Unwanted Duty](#)

[Chapter 41: Salvation/Witnessing Reference](#)

[Chapter 42: Reference Chapter 2](#)

[Author's Biography](#)

## Chapter 1

### A MESSAGE TO CHURCHES AND PROFESSING CHRISTIANS

The Christian church has had many positive impacts for making our world a much better place. Millions of lives have been touched due to the generosity and outreach of churches worldwide. Despite these great contributions, there has been a state of un-rest in the church world for many years. Through the leading of the Holy Spirit, this chapter and other chapters will explain how this issue can finally be resolved.

**By far, the most important of all issues is - How should Christians present salvation to lost sinners?**

For a long time, many church leaders have enforced that Christians should tell the lost that if they want to become Christians, they need to **“only”** believe that Jesus died on the cross for their sins, was buried, and rose from the dead. They seem to believe if you add anything to that, you are preaching a false gospel and are going to hell (Galatians 1:8–9). Or, they may just claim that sinners **“only”** need to trust Christ to erase their sins. Many of these church leaders are boldly against any mention of repentance and Jesus’ Lordship.

These church leaders are very correct when they claim that the only thing that can erase someone’s sins is the blood that Jesus shed on the cross (Revelation 1:5). We could never be good enough or do enough good deeds that would cause our sins to be erased so we can enter heaven; it’s only by God’s grace and mercy that we can be saved (Titus 3:5). Nevertheless, how does this truth relate to the following verses?

In Acts 26:19-20 the apostle Paul was addressing king Agrippa and said, “Whereupon, O king Agrippa, I was not disobedient unto the heavenly vision: But shewed first unto them of Damascus, and at Jerusalem, and throughout all the coasts of Judaea, and *then* to the Gentiles, that they should repent and turn to God, and do works meet for repentance.” **Being saved by the blood Jesus shed on the cross alerts us to avoid spending time with sinful things, which gives us time to live the Christian lifestyle (Hebrews 9:13-14). So, if trusting Jesus’ blood to erase our sins (Romans 3:25) solves everything, why didn’t Paul only say that and bother with Acts 26:20? Jesus’ blood applied to our hearts accomplishes a lot (Hebrews 9:13-14), but if the soil of our**

**hearts aren't prepared to receive it, it doesn't work (the Parable of the Sower). Having the desire to no longer sin on purpose and help people (repent) before we trust Jesus' blood to erase our sins, prepares our hearts.**

Hebrews 6:1 states, "Therefore leaving the principles of the doctrine of Christ, let us go on unto perfection; not laying again the foundation of repentance from dead works, and of faith toward God," **Notice that repentance from dead works (which are sins) comes before faith. Some church leaders would proclaim that someone is adding to the gospel if they tell someone that they need to repent (be willing to quit sinning on purpose after they pray or make a decision to believe Jesus died on the cross for their sins and arose from the dead). (Speaking of repentance and the gospel, see Mark 1:1-5; 14-15. Clearly, repentance isn't adding to the gospel.) Repenting doesn't erase someone's sins, but it does prepare their heart to receive Jesus, explained in chapters 16 and 8 of this book. Of course, Jesus was the only one who never sinned, but we should be willing to try to "follow" His example. As you will see in this chapter, chapter 6, and chapter 7 of this book, someone must be consciously or unconsciously willing to begin following Jesus after they believe He is their Savior.** (Also, see the 6<sup>th</sup> point of chapter 6 of this book for more explanations.)

Jesus said in Luke 13:5, "I tell you, Nay: but, except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish (go to hell)." )"

He said in Matthew 16:25, "For whosoever will save his life shall lose it: and whosoever will lose his life for my sake shall find it."

John 2:23-25 reveals, "Now when he was in Jerusalem at the passover, in the feast *day*, many believed in his name, when they saw the miracles which he did. But Jesus did not commit himself unto them, because he knew all *men*, And needed not that any should testify of man: for he knew what was in man."

And Luke 13:22-24 says, "And he went through the cities and villages, teaching, and journeying toward Jerusalem. Then said one unto him, Lord, are there few that be saved? And he said unto them, Strive to enter in at the strait gate: for many, I say unto you, will seek to enter in, and shall not be able."

Through the leading of the Holy Spirit, the remaining words of this chapter and other chapters will answer these questions and seek to conclude the issue that has dominated the Christian church for far too long.

There seems to be two opposing sides in today's church, those who claim that an unsaved person **“only”** needs to trust the blood that Jesus shed on the cross to erase their sins and let them into heaven and believe He arose from the dead and those who believe that an unsaved person needs to be willing **to repent of their sins, allow Jesus to become the Lord of their life, and be willing to follow Jesus, “and if they are willing to begin living that way for the rest of their life after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian”**, they are ready to become a Christian by trusting the blood that Jesus shed on the cross to erase their sins and let them into heaven and believing He arose from the dead. Please know, I identified more with the first side for many years, and I understand if you are opposed to a different theology. But, I ask that you consider the opposing theology in this chapter and the remaining chapters. (For information on a third side, who believe salvation can be lost, see chapter 38 of this book.)

Many who claim that an unsaved person “only” needs to believe, will probably look at the other side's view and immediately conclude that they claim that an unsaved person has to do good works in order to be saved, they are making it too hard for someone to get saved, and they are preaching a false gospel and are going to hell because of it if they don't change. So, let us open the Bible and see if these claims are true.

Let's begin with discipleship (following Jesus). The website merriam-webster.com defines 'follow' as, 'to copy after : imitate, to accept as authority : obey.' Notice how this definition relates to the following:

Chapters 6 and 7 of this book reveals how an unsaved person eternally benefits by being willing to begin following (imitating and obeying) Jesus after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian. (For an example of how to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.) Please notice that I “did not” say that after an unsaved person follows Jesus, they become a Christian. An unsaved person needs to be consciously or unconsciously (see the 6<sup>th</sup> point of chapter 6 of this book for more explanations) “ready and willing” to begin following Jesus (for the rest of their life) after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian, then their heart is prepared to receive Jesus (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of this book) and be saved by asking Jesus into their heart,

believing that Jesus is their Savior, or trusting Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase their sins and let them into heaven and believing He arose from the dead, etc. **There is a big difference.**

Next, let's cover Jesus' Lordship. The website merriam-webster.com defines 'lord' as, 'one having power and authority over others: a ruler by preeminence to whom service and obedience are due' Notice how this definition relates to the following:

Consider how an unsaved person eternally benefits by being willing for Jesus to become the Lord of their life after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian. Please notice that I “did not” say that after Jesus becomes the Lord of an unsaved person's life (Jesus takes over every area of a person's life, every moment of each day, and they try to say and do what the Holy Spirit leads them to say and do (Romans 8:14).), they become a Christian. An unsaved person needs to be consciously or unconsciously (see the 6<sup>th</sup> point of chapter 6 of this book for more explanations) “willing” for Jesus to become the Lord of their life (for the rest of their life) after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian, then their heart is prepared to receive Jesus (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of this book) and be saved by asking Jesus into their heart, believing that Jesus is their Savior, or trusting the blood that He shed on the cross to erase their sins and let them into heaven and believing He arose from the dead, etc. **There is a big difference.**

The apostle Paul stated two verses on how to obtain salvation that use the title 'Lord' in Acts 16:31 and Romans 10:9, and it means “God who rules”. On this topic, Dr. John MacArthur, in his book *The Gospel According to Jesus* said, “No one who comes for salvation with genuine faith, sincerely believing that Jesus is the eternal, almighty, sovereign God, will willfully reject His authority. True faith is not lip service. Our Lord Himself pronounced condemnation on those who worshiped Him with their lips but not with their lives (Matt. 15:7 – 9). He does not become anyone's Savior until that person receives Him for who He is – Lord of all (Acts 10:36).” Acts 16:31 says, “Believe on the Lord Jesus, and thou shalt be saved.” And in Romans 10:9 it says, “That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.” This doesn't mean if someone simply says Jesus' name and believes He arose from the dead, they will be saved. Someone needs to be consciously or unconsciously (see the 6<sup>th</sup> point of chapter 6 of this book for more explanations) “willing” for Jesus to begin ruling (or taking over) every area of their life and every moment of

each day after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian. For an example of what this lifestyle looks like, see chapter 39 of this book.

The Greek word for ‘Lord’ is kurios. Again, Dr. John MacArthur, in his book *The Gospel According to Jesus*, expounds on this very well. He said, “Proper understanding of any biblical term depends on etymology, context, and history. Etymologically, “kurios” comes from a Greek root that means “rule, dominion, or power.” Contextually, taking Peter’s use of “kurios” in Acts 2:36, it is important to note that verses 34—35 quote from Psalm 110, a messianic psalm of rule and dominion (“Rule in the midst of Thine enemies,” v. 2). Peter was not saying merely that, “God has made Him . . . God,” he was affirming Jesus’ right to rule. Historically, Peter’s sermon addressed the Jews’ role in crucifying their Messiah (v.23). At the trial of Jesus before Pilate and the Jewish mob, the issue was clearly His “kingship,” mentioned at least a dozen times in John 18:33—19:22. Clearly, careful historical-grammatical exegesis of Acts 2:36 can lead to only one conclusion: Jesus is the divine King who rules in the midst of both friends and foes. Having thus identified Christ as Lord of all, Peter makes his gospel appeal. Note that Paul preached Jesus in exactly the same way (2 Cor. 4:3–5): Jesus is our sovereign Lord, and we are His servants.”

**You probably have been taught that discipleship and Jesus’ Lordship are things that come “after” someone believes and is saved, but clearly Jesus turned away thousands from heaven because they were not willing to begin following Him (see chapters 6 and 7 of this book). You will find nowhere in the Bible that Jesus chased after the people who turned away from Him and said, “Just forget what I just said; please come back and just believe in Me.” Also, after studying Jesus’ words in Mark 8:35-37, it’s obvious that He is proclaiming that people need to be willing for Him to become the Lord of their life. (Jesus takes over every moment, every area of their life, and they must be willing to say and do what the Holy Spirit urges and gives them thoughts to say and do throughout each day.) This seems impossible, but the simple outline in chapter 39 of this book explains what this looks like.**

Now, on to repentance. The website merriam-webster.com defines ‘repentance’ as, ‘the action or process of repenting especially for misdeeds or moral shortcomings’. Misdeeds and moral shortcomings are sins.

A common misconception is that the word ‘repent’ means that someone changes their thoughts about Jesus and believes He is the Son of God and their Savior. These people basically claim that believing and repenting are the same thing.

Although according to the Bible (**particularly Mark 1:1-5**) when someone repents, they are repenting of their “sins”. First John 3:10 says, “In this the children of God are manifest, and the children of the devil: whosoever doeth not righteousness is not of God, neither he that loveth not his brother.” Someone who does something unrighteous is sinning. A similar verse is 1 John 5:18 which states, “We know that whosoever is born of God sinneth not (This means - does not continually sin on purpose.); but he that is begotten of God keepeth himself, and that wicked one toucheth him not.” So, this verse proves that whosoever is born of God (which means is a Christian) doesn’t continually sin on purpose. Also, see 3 John 1:11. Someone can trust Jesus’ work on the cross to save them, but if that person never changes with God’s help (repents) and continues to sin the way they did before they prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, and it doesn’t bother them (Hebrews 12:5–11) – (For more information on this topic, see chapter 10 of this book.), they wasn’t truly saved. (They are actually enemies of the cross of Christ, even though they believe He died for them - Philippians 3:18-19.) These people more than likely were taught that repentance was just another word for believing that Jesus is the Son of God and their Savior, and as a result, their sins in general didn’t apply. It is, however, possible for a Christian to try their best to stop sinning but not be as successful as they would like to be. (This is explained in chapter 10 of this book.)

It seems that many read John 3:16 and say, "Well that's all I need; I'll just close the Book." But after that, John 3:17-21 says, "For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved. He that believeth on him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God. And this is the condemnation, that light is come into the world, and men loved darkness rather than light, because their deeds were evil. (**The condemnation, or punishment, for someone who refuses to believe in Jesus is directly related to someone who refuses to quit sinning on purpose.**) For every one that doeth evil (which means continuously sinning on purpose without wanting to stop) hateth the light, neither cometh to the light (will not receive Jesus and be saved), lest his deeds should be reprov'd. But he that doeth

truth cometh to the light, that his deeds may be made manifest, that they are wrought in God." **So, someone can believe that Jesus is their Savior, but if they want to continue sinning the way they have their whole life, they aren't ready to become a Christian.**

Frequently, we hear 2 Peter 3:9 which says, "The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance." It seems many believe that the meaning of this verse is that God doesn't want anyone to go to hell; instead, He wants everyone to believe that Jesus died on the cross for their sins so they will go to heaven. God definitely wants everyone to believe that, but to summarize the three previous paragraphs, someone can believe Jesus died on the cross for their sins, but if they are not "willing" to repent of their sins (try to quit sinning on purpose with God's help), they aren't ready to receive Jesus into their heart (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of this book) and be saved.

Also, notice the word 'perish' in 2 Peter 3:9. Jesus used the same word in Luke 13:5, "I tell you, Nay: but, except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish." God doesn't want anyone to go to hell (perish), but if someone is not "willing to repent", they will "perish" (go to hell).

A verse similar to 2 Peter 3:9 that is spoken of often is Matthew 25:41. It's true that God created hell for the devil and his angels, and God didn't intend for people to spend eternity there, but if people refuse to repent, they will have no other choice than to spend eternity in hell (Luke 13:5).

Obviously, actions such as lying, stealing, and killing are sins (The 10 Commandments), and if we have broken one, we are guilty of all (James 2:10). In spite of this, it is also a sin when someone spends their time, other than work or school, etc., **"doing" things that do not involve God** instead of **"doing" the type of things explained in chapter 39 of this book. It seems that multitudes believe they can get saved and continue to live the same way they always have, with the exception of going to church every Sunday morning. Although, the Bible doesn't teach that.** (Galatians 5:24-25, "And they that are Christ's (**going to heaven**) have crucified the flesh with the affections and lusts (**loving to and wanting to sin**). If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit.") (Galatians 6:8, "For he that soweth to his flesh (**spends their time "doing" things that do not involve God**) shall of the flesh reap corruption (**go to hell**); but he that soweth to the Spirit (**spends their time each day "doing" the type of things explained in**

**chapter 39 of this book** shall of the Spirit reap life everlasting (**go to heaven**.)") When someone is "born again" or is a "new" creature in Christ (2 Corinthians 5:17), they will spend their time differently than they did before they were "born again" or a "new" creature in Christ. **There will be a big change over time.**

It is also a sin when someone spends their time, other than work or school, etc., **“thinking” about things that do not involve God** instead of **“thinking” the way explained in chapter 39 of this book. It seems many believe they can get saved and continue to plan how and when they will commit sexual acts with their girlfriend or boyfriend, think about how someone offended them, parts of the movie they saw last weekend that didn’t involve the things of God, or think of ways they can impress others. However, the Bible doesn't teach that.** (Romans 8:5-8, "For they that are after the flesh do mind the things of the flesh (**They spend their time each day “thinking” about things that do not involve God.**); but they that are after the Spirit the things of the Spirit. (**They spend their time each day “thinking” similar to the way explained in chapter 39 of this book.**) For to be carnally minded *is* death (**go to hell**); but to be spiritually minded *is* life and peace (**go to heaven**). Because the carnal mind *is* enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be. So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God.") When someone is "born again" or is a "new" creature in Christ (2 Corinthians 5:17), they will spend their time thinking differently than they did before they were "born again" or a "new" creature in Christ. **There will be a big change over time.**

The following are two biblical examples of repentance -

1. The apostle Paul was witnessing to king Agrippa and said in Acts 26:19–20, “Whereupon, O king Agrippa, I was not disobedient unto the heavenly vision: But shewed first unto them of Damascus, and at Jerusalem, and throughout all the coasts of Judaea, and then to the Gentiles, that they should repent and turn to God, and do works meet for repentance.” If someone truly repents and turns to God (changes, with God’s help, and begins to think and live the way God wants them to think and live), they will begin to do good works. (**These are things such as: giving money to those who have needs (Luke 12:16-21), teaching people the Bible (Matthew 28:19), counseling with people who are having problems (Galatians 6:2), encouraging others (Hebrews 10:25), correcting believers when they sin (Galatians 6:1), and telling people how to become**

Christians (2 Timothy 4:5) by mouth, through email or social media, and/or by handing out or dropping off tracts that explain how to become a Christian in places like stores or restaurants where people can pick them up; feeding, clothing, and providing shelter and financial help for the less fortunate, and visiting people in hospitals and jails (Matthew 25:35-36; Mark 12:30-31; Titus 3:14); doing acts of kindness for people that will cause them to think good about God (for example - cooking, cleaning, doing yard work, helping shop, washing cars, fixing appliances) (Matthew 5:16; Titus 3:14.) One way someone can know if they have really received salvation is if they begin to do good works (James 2:17). Another way to explain this is that people must be willing to begin doing good works (following Jesus) after they accept Jesus as their Savior. I promise you, a major part of following Jesus is doing good works. While Jesus was on earth, He caused people to praise and think good about God by helping others (doing good works), and when He wasn't doing that, His mind was on the things of His Father. (Chapter 39 of this book gives an example of what following this pattern looks like.) This is how someone needs to be consciously or unconsciously willing to begin living after they accept Jesus as their Savior. (If you read the 6<sup>th</sup> paragraph of chapter 2 of this book, you will see that someone can be unconsciously willing to begin following Jesus after they accept Him as their Savior and be prepared to become a Christian, but in the New Testament we see examples of people who consciously were not willing to follow Jesus “from that moment on and for the rest of their lives”. As a result, the people who turned away from Him gave up their chance to receive salvation at that time. Jesus repeatedly drove thousands away from heaven because they were not willing to begin following (imitating and obeying) Him – This is explained in chapters 6 and 7 of this book.) Notice in Acts 26:19-20, Paul not only witnessed this way to king Agrippa, but to people in Damascus, Jerusalem, throughout all the coasts of Judaea, and then to the Gentiles.

As previously stated - Obviously, actions such as lying, stealing, and killing are sins (The 10 Commandments), and if we have broken one, we are guilty of all (James 2:10). In spite of this, it is also a sin when someone spends their time, other than work or school, etc., **“doing” things that do not involve God** instead of **“doing” the type of things explained in chapter 39 of this book. It seems that multitudes believe they can get saved and continue to live the same way**

**they always have, with the exception of going to church every Sunday morning. Although, the Bible doesn't teach that.** (Galatians 5:24-25, "And they that are Christ's (**going to heaven**) have crucified the flesh with the affections and lusts (**loving to and wanting to sin**). If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit.") (Galatians 6:8, "For he that soweth to his flesh (**spends their time "doing" things that do not involve God**) shall of the flesh reap corruption (**go to hell**); but he that soweth to the Spirit (**spends their time each day "doing" the type of things explained in chapter 39 of this book**) shall of the Spirit reap life everlasting (**go to heaven**).") When someone is "born again" or is a "new" creature in Christ (2 Corinthians 5:17), they will spend their time differently than they did before they were "born again" or a "new" creature in Christ. **There will be a big change over time.**

If someone crucifies their flesh (**gives up loving to and wanting to do and/or actually "doing" things that do not involve God**) and walks in the Spirit (**spends their time living a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book**), they will definitely begin to do good works (Acts 26:19–20). If someone isn't consciously or unconsciously (see the 6<sup>th</sup> point of chapter 6 of this book for more explanations) willing to repent (**leave their sinful lifestyle and turn to God and begin to do good works after they trust Jesus to save them**), they aren't ready to be saved (Acts 26:20). King Agrippa was not willing to live that way "from that moment on" and believe "That Christ should suffer, *and* that he should be the first that should rise from the dead, and should shew light unto the people, and to the Gentiles." (Acts 26:23), even though the prophets and Moses prophesied that (Acts 26:22). And king Agrippa proved it when he said, "Almost thou persuadest me to be a Christian." (Acts 26:28).

**King Agrippa "counted the cost" and wasn't willing to live that way or believe what proved Jesus to be the Messiah. It is very important that someone counts the cost (realizes what lifestyle they will have to live after they accept Jesus as their Savior) before they pray or make a decision to become a Christian. Second Peter 2:21 states, "For it had been better for them not to have known the way of righteousness, than, after they have known it, to turn from the holy commandment delivered unto them." So, someone who doesn't count the cost (Luke 14:25–35) before they make a decision to become a Christian is actually making a big mistake. When someone makes a decision to get saved and later quits living the Christian lifestyle, people make remarks such as, "I thought he was supposed to be a Christian; he is**

**already back to his old ways." When this happens, many non-believers do not think very highly of God or His people. This could have been avoided if the person who quit living the Christian lifestyle had counted the cost and knew they wasn't going to change their mind and go back to their old ways (Luke 9:62) before they prayed or made a decision to trust Jesus' work on the cross to save them and believe He arose from the dead. Pastors, Sunday school teachers, and professing Christians in general who are boldly against discipleship are making a big mistake when they don't tell a sinner to count the cost (realize what kind of radical lifestyle they are going to have to live and know there's no turning back after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian) before they accept Jesus as their Savior.**

2. John the Baptist **(His purpose was to prepare people to receive Jesus as their Savior (become Christians) by getting them to repent (Luke 1:16-17; 76-79). Paul confirmed this in Acts 19:4. Matthew 11:7-11 reveals how very important John and his ministry were.)** said in Matthew 3:2, "And saying, Repent ye: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand." He then said in Matthew 3:7-8, "But when he saw many of the Pharisees and Sadducees come to his baptism, he said unto them, O generation of vipers, who hath warned you to flee from the wrath to come? Bring forth therefore fruits meet for repentance:" When John the Baptist said 'Bring forth therefore fruits meet for repentance' - he meant that if someone repented (or changed, with God's help, and began to think and live the way God wants them to think and live), they will know it because they will begin to bear good fruit (becoming more holy in the way they live (They live a set-apart lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book.) (Romans 6:22), sharing their material possessions (Romans 15:28), having Jesus' character traits (Galatians 5:22-23), praising the Lord (Hebrews 13:15), answered prayer (1 John 5:14-15), and doing good works (Colossians 1:10)). Contrast these things from the true character of the Pharisees laid out in Matthew 23:1-36.

As previously stated - It is also a sin when someone spends their time, other than work or school, etc., **"thinking" about things that do not involve God** instead of **"thinking" the way explained in chapter 39 of this book. It seems many believe they can get saved and continue to plan how and when they will commit sexual acts with their girlfriend or boyfriend, think about how someone offended them, parts of the movie they saw last weekend that didn't involve the things of God, or think of ways they can impress others. However, the Bible doesn't teach**

**that.** (Romans 8:5-8, "For they that are after the flesh do mind the things of the flesh; **(They spend their time each day "thinking" about things that do not involve God.)** but they that are after the Spirit the things of the Spirit. **(They spend their time each day "thinking" similar to the way explained in chapter 39 of this book.)** For to be carnally minded *is* death **(go to hell)**; but to be spiritually minded *is* life and peace **(go to heaven)**. Because the carnal mind *is* enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be. So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God.") When someone is "born again" or is a "new" creature in Christ (2 Corinthians 5:17), they will spend their time thinking differently than they did before they were "born again" or a "new" creature in Christ. **There will be a big change over time.**

If someone is carnally minded and never changes with God's help (repents) and becomes spiritually minded, they will not go to heaven. If someone isn't consciously or unconsciously (see the 6<sup>th</sup> point of chapter 6 of this book for more explanations) "willing" to repent (change the way they live and think, with God's help, and begin to bear good fruit after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian), they aren't ready to become a Christian. The Pharisees and Sadducees that were present at John's baptism were not willing to live and think that way. They continued their sinful actions and thoughts. Although good fruit is the result of someone who has had a change in the way they live (for example, someone beginning to do good works - Colossians 1:10), it is also the result of someone who has had a change in the way they think (holy living – Romans 6:22). When someone lives a holy lifestyle, they set aside what they used to want to do and think about each day that doesn't involve God, and they spend their time doing and thinking about the type of things explained in chapter 39 of this book. Even though the Pharisees and Sadducees could have thought this way, they undoubtedly had hatred and jealousy in their minds toward John the Baptist. The Pharisees and Sadducees also did things like good works, but the reason they did them was to make themselves look good and not to glorify God (Matthew 5:20). Since those things were true, the Pharisees and Sadducees needed to repent (be willing to stop thinking that way).

So, discipleship, Jesus' Lordship, and repentance can be summed up as being willing to change the way you think and live, and chapter 39 of this book gives examples of these changes.

**If Jesus had not shed His blood and died on the cross and arose from the dead, we could have never had our sins forgiven. However, repentance, discipleship, and Jesus' Lordship shouldn't be ignored.** They actually prepare the soil of a person's heart to receive Jesus

(explained in chapters 16 and 8 of this book). When their heart is prepared and they trust the blood that Jesus shed on the cross to erase their sins and believe He arose from the dead, it will result in that person producing abundant fruit; this is the result of salvation (see The Parable of the Sower - Matthew 13:1-23 and the following paragraph). Simply, the most powerful thing in the universe is the blood Jesus shed on the cross. It also alerts us to avoid spending time with sinful things, which gives us time to live the Christian lifestyle (Hebrews 9:13-14). So, if trusting Jesus' blood to erase our sins (Romans 3:25) solves everything, why did Paul go throughout Damascus, and at Jerusalem, and throughout all the coasts of Judaea, and then to the Gentiles, telling them to repent and turn to God, and do works meet for repentance (Acts 26:20)? Jesus' blood applied to our hearts accomplishes a lot (Hebrews 9:13-14), but if the soil of our hearts aren't prepared to receive it, it doesn't work (the Parable of the Sower). Having the desire to no longer sin on purpose and help people (repent) before we trust Jesus' blood to erase our sins, prepares our hearts.

These evidences, or fruits, are major changes that have happened in a Christian's life, such as (becoming more holy in the way they live (They live a set-apart lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book.) (Romans 6:22), sharing their material possessions (Romans 15:28), telling people how to become Christians (Romans 1:16), having Jesus' character traits (Galatians 5:22-23), praising the Lord (Hebrews 13:15), answered prayer (1 John 5:14-15), and doing good works (Colossians 1:10)). Again, this concept is from Jesus' The Parable of the Sower (Matthew 13:1-23). Jesus also said in Matthew 7:20, "Wherefore by their fruits ye shall know them.", and that means a person will show evidence (or fruit) that proves they have really been saved.

There are instances in the Bible where Jesus granted eternal life in heaven to people, and it seemed very simple. Two examples of this were the thief on the cross (Luke 23:42-43) and the paralytic who was lowered through a roof while Jesus was preaching in a house in Capernaum (Mark 2:3-5). You might be saying, "The thief on the cross and the paralytic didn't contemplate all the technical things I've discussed." Yes, that's probably true, but being who He is, Jesus could read their hearts, and He knew the soil of their hearts were properly prepared to receive Him (The Parable of the Sower – Matthew 13:1-23). Unlike us, Jesus knows everyone's heart. John 2:23-25 proves this, "Now when he was in Jerusalem at the passover, in the feast *day*, many believed in his name, when they saw the miracles which he did. But Jesus did not commit himself unto them,

because he knew all *men*, And needed not that any should testify of man: for he knew what was in man.” Also, why didn’t Jesus make it simple when He witnessed to the Rich Young Ruler in Luke 18:18-23? The reason is because Jesus knew the Rich Young Ruler’s heart. Since we don’t know how prepared or unprepared the soil of people’s hearts are to receive Jesus, we shouldn’t tell everyone to “just believe”. If they are willing to “repent”, they are ready to “believe” (see chapters 16 and 8 of this book). Some, however, may say that Paul couldn't read people's hearts, and he didn't mention repentance or anything like that so their hearts would have been prepared to receive Jesus before they accepted Him as their Savior. An example they could use is the simple invitation Paul and Silas gave the Philippian jailer in Acts 16:31 in that if he believed on the Lord Jesus Christ, he would be saved (become a Christian). Although, if you read the events that led up to this, you should know that his heart definitely was prepared to receive Jesus. Also, since Paul told those in Damascus, and at Jerusalem, and throughout all the coasts of Judaea, and then to the Gentiles, that they should repent and turn to God, and do works meet for repentance (Acts 26:20), he more than likely mentioned this topic in Acts 16:32. (Also, see the eight indented paragraph of chapter 5 of this book.) **Paul couldn't read peoples' hearts like Jesus was able to do, and as a result, he told many how to prepare their hearts to receive Jesus by getting them to repent (Acts 26:20).**

It seems the majority of people who have truly been saved didn’t understand or consider repentance, discipleship, or Jesus’ Lordship. They really didn’t need to do so, because their hearts were already greatly prepared to give Jesus their best (The Parable of the Sower – Matthew 13:1-23) before they trusted Jesus to save them, and many of them probably didn’t realize it.

Although, the great tragedy today is that large numbers of people believe they are a Christian because they prayed a prayer or made a decision to believe that Jesus died on the cross for their sins, and they can kick back, relax, and wait for heaven, because they are saved by grace. These people do not understand grace. Titus 2:11-13 says, “For the grace of God that bringeth salvation hath appeared to all men, Teaching us that, denying ungodliness and worldly lusts, we should live soberly, righteously, and godly, in this present world; Looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ;” **The tragedy is that they were not willing to repent. They believed what they needed to believe in order to become**

**a Christian, but they didn't get saved because the soil of their hearts weren't prepared when they prayed or made a decision to become a Christian (The Parable of the Sower – Matthew 13:1-23). Although, their hearts would have been prepared if they had truly repented "before" they believed (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of this book).**

**With the overall proof that has been given in this chapter, being willing to follow Jesus and being willing to let Jesus become the Lord of your life basically mean the same thing as being willing to repent.**

People also have the idea that they will become Christians and maybe get around to following Jesus someday. Jesus didn't take that approach - Luke 13:22-24 records, "And he went through the cities and villages, teaching, and journeying toward Jerusalem. Then said one unto him, Lord, are there few that be saved? And he said unto them, Strive to enter in at the strait gate: for many, I say unto you, will seek to enter in, and shall not be able."

In Dr. John MacArthur's book *The Gospel According to Jesus* he said, "The Greek word for "strive" is *agonizomai*, implying an agonizing, intense, purposeful struggle. It is the same word used 1 Corinthians 9:25 of an athlete battling to win a victory. It is also used in Colossians 4:12 of Epaphras laboring fervently, and in 1 Timothy 6:12 of the Christian who "fights the good fight of faith." It is a struggle, a battle, an extreme effort."

In other words, the word 'strive' means to make every effort. A lot of people who have read Luke 13:22-24 may be trying to figure out why Jesus said that, because it seems He meant that someone has to labor and work in order to be saved. However, that isn't what He meant. Multitudes of unsaved people are taught that they can be saved if they believe Jesus died on the cross for their sins and arose from the dead. As a result, the unsaved person has two choices - If they believe Jesus died on the cross for their sins, they will go to heaven. If they don't believe Jesus died on the cross for their sins, they won't go to heaven. There are those who really become Christians when they choose to believe, because their hearts were prepared to receive Jesus before they believed (The Parable of the Sower - Matthew 13:1-23). **Although, the tragedy is that few people get saved when they are simply left with the decision to believe or not to believe. The reason this happens is because they don't strive to enter in at the straight gate (Luke 13:22-24).** People need to **realize** that after they pray or make decisions to become Christians, they must make every effort (try very hard) to begin following Jesus (live a lifestyle similar to the one

explained in chapter 39 of this book), no matter who or what circumstances try to stop them. So, the question is, "Why do few people get saved?" The answer is, "They don't strive to enter in at the straight gate (Luke 13:22-24)." This is basically the same question the person asked Jesus in Luke 13:23. The person asked Jesus, "Lord, are there few that be saved?" In Luke 13:24 Jesus answered and said, "Strive to enter in at the strait gate: for many, I say unto you, will seek to enter in, and shall not be able."

Mistakenly, people make decisions to trust Jesus' work on the cross to save them, and they say things such as, "Well I might go to church Sunday morning, and I could read a little bit of the Bible today." As a result, these people keep living and thinking this way, and they believe that is all there is to living the Christian lifestyle. They basically ignore 2 Corinthians 5:17 which says, "Therefore if any man *be* in Christ, *he is* a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new." and Colossians 3:1-4 which says, "If ye then be risen with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God. Set your affection on things above, not on things on the earth. For ye are dead, and your life is hid with Christ in God. When Christ, *who is* our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory." **This is assurance of salvation**; Jesus completely takes over every area of someone's life and every moment of each day. For an example of this lifestyle, see chapter 39 of this book.

Although, Revelation 3:15-16 says, "I know thy works, that thou art neither cold nor hot: I would thou wert cold or hot. So then because thou art lukewarm (not trying their best to live the Christian lifestyle), and neither cold nor hot, I will spue thee out of my mouth." In Revelation 3:17-18 Jesus also reveals that those He was addressing were also proud and thought they didn't need correction. Then, Jesus proclaims in Revelation 3:19, "As many as I love, I rebuke and chasten: be zealous therefore, and repent." This verse means if someone is bothered and upset because they are lukewarm, that means Jesus is disciplining them, they belong to Him and are saved, and they just need to be zealous and repent because they are lukewarm. However, it doesn't always necessarily end there, and many do not understand what the word 'zealous' means.

Many have prayed or made decisions to become Christians, and if they read this and realize that they haven't been living the Christian lifestyle the best they can, they are probably upset (Revelation 3:19). Since they are upset, they believe this is proof that Jesus is disciplining them

because they belong to Him (are going to heaven), in the same way a father disciplines his son (explained in Hebrews 12:5–11). So, they say to themselves, "All I have to do is repent by asking God to forgive me for being lukewarm (not trying their best to live the Christian lifestyle), and I'm good to go." **The big question is, "Did they really repent when they asked God to forgive them; were they 'zealous'?"** (Although they may not have the opportunity for all the following things, the following paragraphs give a visual/practical example of what it means to be willing to repent and do so in a zealous manner. A simple summary of how they need to be willing to live "from this moment on and for the rest of their lives" is - when they don't feel that the Lord is wanting them to witness to and/or do other things to help others, they try to spend the rest of their time thinking about the things of God. You will see this pattern beginning with the next paragraph. Jesus also teaches us to count the cost (Luke 14:25–35), so the following outline also helps in doing this.) Everyone isn't gifted in the same ways (For example, every Christian isn't a Bible teacher.), but the following outline basically covers every area of someone's life, broken down into separate paragraphs. The purpose of this outline isn't necessarily to make a promise to God, but it should give you better understanding. The way they can know if they really repented is for them to tell God the following things:

"I will from this moment on (because I'm thankful for Jesus dying on the cross to erase my sins and for all the things that are waiting for me in heaven, and I love Him more than anything or anyone (Psalm 139:23-24)), try very hard (Luke 13:22-24) to do things such as (while not doing them out of unwanted duty, explained in chapter 40 of this book) -

spend more of my money on things like evangelistic associations, charities, and things for God's purposes instead of entertainment (Technology items can be used and enjoyed for God's purposes, and parts of movies, for example, can be enjoyed in order to glorify God.) and material things in order to show off and/or don't involve God (Matthew 6:19-21), if I have money left over from providing myself with food, clothing, and shelter, I'm willing to give to those who have needs (Luke 12:16-21) (Or if it is an expensive need where a collection could be taken up, I want to ask the church that I attend or have supported financially to help meet their needs.), give offerings to my church every week (1 Corinthians 16:2);

teach the Bible (Matthew 28:19), counsel people who are having problems (Galatians 6:2), encourage others (Hebrews 10:25), correct believers when they sin (Galatians 6:1), and tell people how to become Christians (2 Timothy 4:5) by mouth, through email or social media, and/or by handing out or dropping off tracts that tell people how to become Christians in places like stores or restaurants where people can pick them up;

feed, clothe, and find shelter for the less fortunate, and visit people in hospitals and jails (Matthew 25:35-36; Mark 12:30-31; Titus 3:14);

do acts of kindness for people that will cause them to think good about You (for example - cook, clean, do yard work, help shop, wash cars, fix appliances) (Matthew 5:16; Titus 3:14);

**and when I don't feel that You are wanting me to do those type of things, I will try to do things such as -**

read through the Bible and do what it says to do and don't do what it says not to do (James 1:22);

think about what I've read (Psalm 119:15);

think about things such as a miracle I witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness I saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because You gifted them with that ability, or imagine what will be going on in heaven when I get there, etc. (Philippians 4:8);

pray how Jesus taught in Matthew 6:9-13 by (**admiring You, asking You to forgive me when I sin and try not to do it again** (especially every harsh or idle word I say which reveals the state of my heart (Matthew 12:33-37), and I can do wonderful things for You, but if I'm repeatedly, without remorse, and purposefully not patient (giving up living the Christian lifestyle when people and things are difficult, getting back at people who did wrong to me, and getting upset or flustered when I'm waiting on someone, for example), kind (helping those who have physical, mental, emotional, financial, or spiritual needs I come across), if I envy, brag, or I'm proud of my mind, body, accomplishments, and/or my possessions; think that I'm better and more important than others, rude, insist on my own way, irritable and/or resentful, rejoice at wrongdoing, dwell over/keep count of people's sins against me and hold grudges, have improper or dishonorable behavior, blame people for having evil desires or intentions behind what they do, don't think the best of people, don't try to cover people's faults (This doesn't apply to criminal activity.) and instead expose the wrong they did in order to make them look bad in front of others (The three previous descriptions that are underlined do not apply to possible false teachers – explained in much of chapter 5 of this book.), and don't continue to forgive people who sin against me and expect that You will work everything out right, the good things about me don't count (1 Corinthians 13:1–6). I will also try to rejoice about the good things of someone and won't believe they did wrong, but I will try to only believe they did wrong if there is impossible to deny evidence. (1 Corinthians 13:7)); **thank You for blessings and difficult circumstances (1 Thessalonians 5:18), and ask You to help me and others**);

talk about You and the Bible with people who will listen (Deuteronomy 6:7), say things that can help and encourage others and isn't perverted, hateful, foul, threatening, argumentative, prideful, rude, trying to make fun of others, etc. (Ephesians 4:29), talk about a miracle I witnessed or heard

of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness I saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because You gifted them with that ability, how beautiful the weather and scenery is because You made it that way, or what will be going on in heaven when we get there, etc. (Philippians 4:8);

attend church services I am able to attend in order to worship, fellowship, and learn (Hebrews 10:25);

try to do whatever the Holy Spirit gives me thoughts to say and do, no matter how challenging they may be or who or what tries to stop me (James 4:17);

try not to commit sinful actions and thoughts (Luke 13:3), such as lusting (For example, wanting (coveting) another man's wife should be avoided (Matthew 5:27-30), and it also becomes sinful when you plan how and when you will do any form of a sexual act (Ephesians 5:3) with someone you aren't married to (This is evil desire (Colossians 3:5) and impure thoughts (Philippians 4:8).) and carry those acts out (James 1:14-15). When you do these sexual acts, you give in to impurity (1 Thessalonians 4:7; Colossians 3:5) and aren't able to control your body in sanctification and honor (1 Thessalonians 4:3-5). If you aren't able to stop doing sexual acts, you should become married (1 Corinthians 7:9).), getting drunk (1 Corinthians 6:10), practicing homosexuality (Romans 1:26-28), thinking bad thoughts about others (1 Corinthians 13:1-7), talking bad about others (Romans 1:29), lying, and stealing), and avoid saying, thinking, and doing things I feel might be sinful (Isaiah 30:21; Romans 14:23);

**I'm willing to let Jesus become the Lord of my life (2 Corinthians 4:3-5; Romans 10:9; Acts 2:36) by taking over every "area" of my life from this moment on - (the way I handle my money, the way I spend my time each day, thoughts, conversations with people who will listen**

(Deuteronomy 6:7 and see chapter 42 of this book for helpful information), what I watch and listen to (explained in chapter 23 of this book), where I go, try not to avoid witnessing to or helping others because I'm afraid of getting killed or robbed (Matthew 10:28), plans of each day, and future goals).

**I'm willing to let Jesus become the Lord of my life (2 Corinthians 4:3-5; Romans 10:9; Acts 2:36) by taking over every "moment" of my life from this moment on** - Whatever I do (eat, drink, get ready for work or school, drive, shop, play golf, watch a sporting event, or mow the lawn, etc.), I want to try to do it to please You and try to think about things such as what I've read in the Bible (Psalm 119:15); pray (Matthew 6:9-13); think about things such as a miracle I witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness I saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because You gifted them with that ability, or imagine what will be going on in heaven when I get there, etc. (Philippians 4:8) while I eat, drink, get ready for work or school, drive, shop, play golf, watch a sporting event, or mow the lawn, etc. (1 Corinthians 10:31).

I want to think, say, watch, listen to, go where, and do what Jesus wants me to do each day (Mark 8:34).

I "will" try to do these things no matter who or what circumstances try to stop me (Luke 13:24; Luke 9:62).

I want to try to obey Colossians 3:17 by before I say or do something to help someone, I want to tell You that I am doing it for the Lord Jesus, and I thank You for the opportunity. I don't only want to take care of people's needs by witnessing to and/or doing other things to help them, but the reason I want to do these things is so they will think good about You (Matthew 5:16)."

Also, the long outline you just read will be very helpful in teaching you and others how to live the Christian lifestyle each day, so please become familiar with it.

Weeks, months, and years after they have told God that they will try to do these type of things (repented), they should do what 2 Corinthians 13:5 says, "Examine yourselves, whether ye be in the faith; prove your own selves. Know ye not your own selves, how that Jesus Christ is in you, except ye be reprobates **(not really a Christian)**?" In addition to having confidence that their sins are forgiven, if they try to and are increasingly able to do those type of things, they will know they truly repented.

Although, someone may believe they are a Christian because they are bothered that they are lukewarm (not trying their best to live the way that was explained in the long list), but if they never truly repent (try very hard "from that moment on" to follow Jesus – explained in the long list) and are able to live that way more and more over time (They should be able to do this if they are really a Christian - (2 Corinthians 3:18).) Jesus will spew them out of His mouth. Hebrews 12:5–11 and Revelation 3:15-16 and 19 seems to contradict themselves with 2 Corinthians 5:17 and Colossians 3:1-4. Second Corinthians 5:17 and Colossians 3:1-4 mean if someone is not a completely new person over time after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian, they aren't really a Christian. But, Hebrews 12:5–11 and Revelation 3:15-16,19 seem to mean if someone is bothered and upset because they aren't a completely new person, that is evidence they are a Christian, and they just need to repent and try to do better. However, they can tell God that they will try to do better, but weeks, months, and years after they have supposedly repented, they should be well on their way to becoming a completely new person (2 Corinthians 5:17; Colossians 3:1-4). Even people in prison are ashamed of themselves for not living the way they should. Also keep in mind, Hebrews 10:26-27 says, "For if we sin wilfully after that we have received the knowledge of the truth, there remaineth no more sacrifice for sins, But a certain fearful looking for of judgment and fiery indignation, which shall devour the adversaries." If a professing Christian thinks they can slack off from living the Christian lifestyle every once in a while and start back, they need to understand that it doesn't work that way.

**It's very possible, though, for someone to be a Christian but struggle to become a completely new person in all areas of their life. Probably the best way that someone can know if they became a Christian after they had faith in Jesus is if they have strong desires to learn**

about the Bible (1 Peter 2:2), have strong desires to follow Jesus (1 Peter 4:2; Colossians 2:11), and try their best, with God's help, to follow Jesus (see the long list in this chapter) and to follow 2 Corinthians 5:15 and Colossians 3:1-4 by trying to become a completely new person (their thoughts, conversations (see chapter 42 of this book for helpful information), what they watch and listen to (explained in chapter 23 of this book), where they go, what they spend their time doing each day, the way they handle their money (explained in chapter 19 of this book), physical safety (Matthew 10:28), and future goals), and they become saddened when they fail to live this way (2 Corinthians 7:9-10) and become motivated to not fail the Lord again (Hebrews 12:5-11; Revelation 3:15-16, 19) because they love Him more than anything or anyone (Psalm 139:23-24; 1 John 5:3). Chapters 12-15 and 19 of this book are also important to examine.

On the other hand, if someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but their heart desires are opposite and/or there has been no change in the following things - they enjoy seeing and hearing the same sinful things or feel like sinning the way they did before they prayed or made a decision to become a Christian (For example, they still want to get drunk, chase women in order to have sex, show off their appearance or material things in order to impress others.) (Romans 6:1-11), they aren't able to have assurance that they are really a Christian.

A similar and very important topic that involves the heart is - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but these things - (their job, home, family, friends, appearance, personal safety (Matthew 10:28), collecting finances, buying material things in order to show off, spending their time enjoying watching and/or listening to things that don't involve God (explained in chapter 23 of this book), and/or being entertained by things that don't involve God - getting drunk, doing drugs (1 Corinthians 6:19-20; 1 Thessalonians 5:6-8; 1 Peter 5:8), lusting (For example, wanting (coveting) another man's wife should be avoided (Matthew 5:27-30), and it also becomes sinful when someone plans how and when they will do any form of a sexual act (Ephesians 5:3) with someone they aren't married to (This is evil desire (Colossians 3:5) and impure thoughts (Philippians 4:8).) and carry those acts out (James 1:14-15). When they do these sexual acts, they give in to impurity (1 Thessalonians 4:7; Colossians 3:5) and aren't able to control their body in sanctification and honor (1 Thessalonians 4:3-5). If they aren't able to stop

doing sexual acts, they should become married (1 Corinthians 7:9).) are more important to them and/or they enjoy them more than doing the kind of things explained in the long list of this chapter, and when they aren't doing these kind of things, thinking about the things of God (Psalm 139:23-24 and 1 John 5:3), they need to ask God to forgive them for that, and try their best to change with God's help.

**In conclusion, the most important thing you need to do is follow the following four paragraphs -**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc.), but you are not a completely different person (your thoughts, conversations (see chapter 42 of this book for helpful information), what you watch and listen to (explained in chapter 23 of this book), where you go, what you spend your time doing each day, the way you handle your money (explained in chapter 19 of this book), physical safety (Matthew 10:28), and future goals) and are bothered because of this and want to put Jesus first in every area of your life from this moment on, please repent. (Follow the outline in this chapter or chapter 39 of this book.)

If in the future you haven't tried your absolute best to live this way, ask God to forgive you for that. After that, "from that moment on" try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) to begin living this way again, with God helping you change. (Continue to follow this pattern every time you fail to live this way.)

If you have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but you're not sure you will go to heaven (Hebrews 11:6, Matthew 21:18-22, 1 John 5:14, and Hebrews 11:1), please follow chapter 41 of this book.

If you have never prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, you have just counted the cost (Luke 14:25-35) after reading this chapter (realized what type of lifestyle you will have to live after you pray or make a decision to become a Christian). If you're willing to begin living this way after you accept Christ as your Savior (strive to enter in at the straight gate (Luke 13:22-24)), you're ready to tell God that you trust Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believe He arose from the dead.

## Chapter 2

### SOMETHING IS SERIOUSLY WRONG

There is nothing more depressing than the thought of multitudes, who thought they were going to heaven finding out they were misled once their souls leave this world. Sadly, they thought they were going to heaven because they simply believed the facts about Jesus, said a prayer, and believed they were on easy street until they left this world. Even though many pastors and missionaries have repeatedly drilled this theory into the minds of millions worldwide, we will explore many biblical passages in this book that doesn't match up to that.

Unfortunately, it seems that the popular teaching in churches for many years has been that someone can become a Christian simply by believing the facts about Jesus' death on the cross so they can go to heaven, even if they have little or no desire to truly begin to live for Jesus "from that moment on and for the rest of their lives". Large numbers of people I talk to claim to be Christians. And why not? It seems that according to many church leaders, becoming a Christian only requires a couple seconds of thought, and you are good to go; you can live any way you want, and you should never doubt if you are really born again. This doesn't agree with Hebrews 5:9, along with many other verses, which states that Jesus "became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him". Ignoring Jesus' commands in the Bible and living any way you please because you believe Jesus died for your sins, doesn't mean you're a Christian. Jesus said in Matthew 7:14, "Because strait *is* the gate, and narrow **(difficult)** *is* the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it." Most people, it seems, believe in Jesus, but the reason few enter heaven is because many of them are not willing to follow Jesus (live lifestyles similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book after they pray or make decisions to become Christians.) Chapters 6 and 7 of this book give more information on this topic. With all the persecution true Christians should face some time in their lives if they live long enough after they pray or make decisions to become Christians (2 Timothy 3:12) and the devil trying extra hard to tempt them to sin so people who aren't Christians will see and hear them sin and say, "Well, I'm just as good as they are; there's no reason for me to become a Christian.", following Jesus is in fact very difficult (see Matthew 7:14). Believing in Jesus and taking life easy is in fact easy and not difficult.

James 2:19 says, “Thou believest that there is one God; thou doest well: the devils also believe, and tremble.” Many may say, “James 2:19 says demons believe in God, but it doesn’t say they believe in Jesus or believe He came to earth to save sinners, so that is why demons aren’t saved.” That’s not an accurate conclusion, because Mark 1:23-26 says, “And there was in their synagogue a man with an unclean spirit; and he cried out, Saying, Let *us* alone; what have we to do with thee, thou Jesus of Nazareth? art thou come to destroy us? I know thee who thou art, the Holy One of God. And Jesus rebuked him, saying, Hold thy peace, and come out of him. And when the unclean spirit had torn him, and cried with a loud voice, he came out of him.” It is also very important to include the verses before and after James 2:19. James 2:18-20 says, “Yea, a man may say, Thou hast faith, and I have works: shew me thy faith without thy works, and I will shew thee my faith by my works. Thou believest that there is one God; thou doest well: the devils also believe, and tremble. But wilt thou know, O vain man, that faith without works is dead?” Clearly after reading this, you can see that someone can believe in God or believe that Jesus came to earth to be the Savior (Mark 1:23-26), but if they never do good works after believing (with the exception of those who get saved but don’t live long after that or people who are in bad health and can’t get out and do much, etc.), they aren’t really saved. More particularly, if they aren’t consciously or unconsciously willing to begin doing good works (follow Jesus – explained in chapter 34 of this book) after they pray or make a decision to get saved, their heart isn’t prepared to receive Jesus (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of this book). Also see the 6<sup>th</sup> point of chapter 6 of this book for more explanations. Obviously, demons do not do good works, and they are not “willing” to do good works, because they are trying very hard to send people to hell instead of heaven. Clearly, there is a major difference.

A lot of people believe in Jesus without hesitation, but they aren’t willing to follow Jesus (think like Jesus thought, talk like Jesus talked, do the type of things Jesus did, try to do whatever God’s Spirit leads them to do each day (Romans 8:14), and read His Word and live the way it says to live. For an example of what this lifestyle looks like, see chapter 39 of this book.) for the rest of their lives after they pray or make decisions to become Christians. A particular instance is told in John 2:23–25, “Now when he was in Jerusalem at the passover, in the feast *day*, many believed in his name, when they saw the miracles which he did. But Jesus did not commit himself unto them, because he knew all *men*, And needed not that any should testify of man: for he knew what was in man.” Jesus also said in John 10:27–28, “My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they

follow me: And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any *man* pluck them out of my hand.” John 8:12 adds, “Then spake Jesus again unto them, saying, I am the light of the world: he that followeth me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life.”

Tragically, unlike those in Jesus’ day who counted the cost (they realized what kind of lifestyle they were going to have to live and knew they couldn’t change their minds and go back to living their old lifestyles) and knew they weren’t going to heaven unless they decided to begin following Jesus “from that moment on and for the rest of their lives”, many today pray and believe in Jesus without counting the cost before they pray and believe. As a result, they never begin to change and live the Christian lifestyle (which proves they have really been saved). It seems multitudes have the idea that they will pray a prayer to become saved and then basically live the same way they used to live, with the exception of going to church for an hour on Sunday morning. As you read this book, you will see that the Bible doesn’t teach this. We can stop this vicious cycle now by getting this message out.

Nevertheless, I do believe that many are truly saved, even though they just believed the facts about Jesus. This is because their hearts were so prepared to live for Jesus and to put Him first, that all it took was a simple two-second prayer. Jesus described this in the Parable of the Sower (Matthew 13:1-23). They received the Word, and it produced abundant fruit (good works, telling others how to become Christians, and holy living — They live a set-apart lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book.) These people shouldn’t doubt their salvation, because Jesus said in Matthew 7:16-20, “Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles? Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit. A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither *can* a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit. Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire. Wherefore by their fruits ye shall know them.” The people who live this way after they believe truly begin to follow Jesus the way He said to follow, even though they didn’t verbally make a commitment to God when they prayed to become saved. These fruits are the result of someone who is truly saved, not someone who said a prayer twenty years ago and has had little or no change in the way they live.

Many probably believe they are saved because they go to church and say a prayer to God before they go to sleep at night, etc., but the rest of the week they think, say, and do what they

want and not what God wants them to think, say, and do. That is not even close when it comes to having assurance of salvation. Colossians 3:1–4 says, “If ye then be risen with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God. Set your affection on things above, not on things on the earth. For ye are dead, and your life is hid with Christ in God. When Christ, *who is* our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory.” Second Corinthians 5:17 adds, “Therefore if any man *be* in Christ **(if you are going to heaven)**, *he is* a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.” Multitudes also believe they can continually **(without trying to stop)** commit sins such as gossip (Romans 1:29), jealousy (Galatians 5:20), lusting (For example, wanting (coveting) another man’s wife should be avoided (Matthew 5:27-30), and it also becomes sinful when someone plans how and when they will do any form of a sexual act (Ephesians 5:3) with someone they aren’t married to (This is evil desire (Colossians 3:5) and impure thoughts (Philippians 4:8).) and carry those acts out (James 1:14-15). When they do these sexual acts, they give in to impurity (1 Thessalonians 4:7; Colossians 3:5) and aren’t able to control their body in sanctification and honor (1 Thessalonians 4:3-5). If they aren’t able to stop doing sexual acts, they should become married (1 Corinthians 7:9).), thinking bad thoughts about others (1 Corinthians 13:1–7), getting drunk (1 Corinthians 6:10), and practicing homosexuality (Romans 1:26-28) and still be a Christian. Jesus said in John 14:15, “If ye love me, keep my commandments.” We still have time to reach many who believe they are saved but really aren’t.

## Chapter 3

### JESUS' WORK ON THE CROSS

God created you, loves you, and wants you to live in heaven with Him after you leave this world. However, there is a big problem that blocks everyone from entering heaven the way we are. This problem is sin (saying, thinking, and doing things that God hates). Romans 3:23 says, “For all have sinned and come short of the glory of God.” God is holy and can’t even look at sin (Isaiah 59:2), so there is no way He will allow people with sin to enter heaven. God is not only separated from sin, but being who He is, He has to judge and punish sin. This means He has the right to judge and send sinners to hell for doing what He hates—sinning.

Although, He loves us and made a perfect plan for us to have our sins erased so we could go to heaven, and as a result, heaven wouldn’t be defiled by our sin. This truly wonderful plan involved His Son, Jesus Christ, who came to earth to rescue us from our sins. Jesus not only healed large crowds and was the greatest preacher and teacher in history, but He also allowed Himself to be taken captive, put on trial, and nailed to a cross by people who didn’t believe He was the Son of God. The devil (Satan) thought he had won the battle, but this was God’s plan to bring lost people into His kingdom. When people sinned during Old Testament times, they had their sins temporarily erased through animal sacrifices, and the animals had to be spotless. The innocent animal would take the punishment and death the person deserved. But God needed a perfect and final sacrifice that would permanently erase sins. Since Jesus never sinned and was perfectly innocent (symbolizing a spotless animal), His blood was the only sacrifice that God could use to make this happen.

While Jesus was on the cross, God took our sins (past, present, and future) and placed them on Jesus, who became guilty for every sin. “All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.” (Isaiah 53:6).

Then, God punished Him for every sin. Isaiah 53:5 says, “But he *was* wounded for our transgressions, *he was* bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace *was* upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.”

After Jesus was punished, bled, and died, God’s wrath toward sin was satisfied (Isaiah 53:10-11 proclaims, “Yet it pleased the LORD to bruise him; he hath put *him* to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see *his* seed, he shall prolong *his* days, and the pleasure of the LORD shall prosper in his hand. He shall see of the travail of his soul, *and* shall be satisfied: by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.”), and every sin was erased by Jesus’ shed blood – “And from Jesus Christ, *who is* the faithful witness, *and* the first begotten of the dead, and the prince of the kings of the earth. Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood,” (Revelation 1:5). First Peter 1:18-19 also states, “Forasmuch as ye know that ye were not redeemed with corruptible things, *as* silver and gold, from your vain conversation *received* by tradition from your fathers; But with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot:”

The Good News for us is that if we are ready to begin living a brand-new lifestyle (This will be explained in the next chapter and other chapters of this book.) after we believe our sins were erased after Jesus was punished for them, shed His blood, and died, we will go to heaven - “Whom God hath set forth *to be* a propitiation through faith in his blood ...” (Romans 3:25). Isaiah 1:18 adds, “Come now, and let us reason together, saith the LORD: though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they be red like crimson, they shall be as wool.”

We all deserve to pay the penalty for our sins against God (who is so holy, that He can’t even look at sin), but Jesus took the punishment we deserved and freely gave us His righteousness (as if we had never sinned) in exchange. Second Corinthians 5:21 declares, “For he hath made him *to be* sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.”

Then, three days later Jesus arose from the dead to prove that our sins are paid for, which means we can go to heaven when we leave this world - “And if Christ be not raised, your faith *is* vain; ye are yet in your sins.” (1 Corinthians 15:17).

## Chapter 4

### THE TRADGEY OF NOT COUNTING THE COST

After believing the truths from the previous chapter, the classic prayer people say to become Christians is ABC (Admit you've sinned, Believe Jesus died on the cross for your sins and arose from the dead, and Confess Jesus as the Lord of your life). Many don't hesitate to pray this to God, and they make a decision without knowing what they are really getting themselves into. The Christian lifestyle doesn't end with believing in Jesus and attending church for an hour on Sunday. That is only the beginning. First Corinthians 7:22-24 says, "For he that is called in the Lord, *being* a servant, is the Lord's freeman: likewise also he that is called, *being* free, is Christ's servant. Ye are bought with a price; be not ye the servants of men. Brethren, let every man, wherein he is called, therein abide with God." Before someone is saved, they are free to do whatever they want, but after someone trusts Jesus' shed blood to erase their sins, they are bought (Revelation 5:9), then basically their purpose in life is to witness to and/or help others and spend their time with God. This is exactly how Jesus lived, and God's purpose for people's lives is that they get saved and then follow Jesus. (For an example of how to begin following Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.) Romans 8:29 says, "For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate *to be* conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren." If people realized that after they believe in Jesus, their old lives end and their new purposes are to be "servants" of Jesus, their hearts would be prepared to receive Jesus (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of this book). Those who just believe in Jesus because it's the social and popular thing to do will think again.

If someone's heart is prepared to receive Jesus, they are saved when they trust Jesus' shed blood to erase their sins and believe He arose from the dead. Tragically, many people's hearts aren't prepared to receive Jesus because they don't count the cost (realize they need to be willing to begin being Jesus' servant, His disciple, and allow Him to become the Lord (or controller) of their lives "for the rest of their lives" after they accept Him as their Savior and know they can't go back to living their old lifestyles – An example of what this lifestyle looks like is explained in chapter 39 of this book.), and they basically just believe the facts, relax, and wait for heaven. As a

result, the soils of their hearts are not prepared to receive Jesus, and they don't have a changed life (Luke 8:4–15 Parable of the Sower).

In Luke 14:25–35 Jesus meant that before people decide to come after Him and be His disciple (live the Christian lifestyle by imitating and obeying His Word), they should count the cost (realize what they're getting themselves into) before they begin to follow Him. When He told the multitudes what they were getting themselves into, many turned away and followed Him no more. Also, John 2:23–25 says, "Now when he was in Jerusalem at the passover, in the feast *day*, many believed in his name, when they saw the miracles which he did. But Jesus did not commit himself unto them, because he knew all *men*, And needed not that any should testify of man: for he knew what was in man." In this passage, large crowds were eagerly following Jesus, but He did not **"commit"** Himself to them because He knew they were just admiring Him and believing in Him due to the miracles He was performing, but He knew they were not willing to obey Matthew 16:24 by denying themselves (giving up what they wanted to do), taking up a cross (being willing to identify with Jesus, even though they knew it could result in them suffering much verbal abuse and even being put to death for following Him), and following Him (living a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book). They weren't willing for Jesus to truly become the Lord (or controller) of their lives, where He takes over every moment and every area of a person's life, and they must be willing to say and do what the Holy Spirit urges and gives them thoughts to say and do throughout each day. **There are a lot of people who read verses like John 2:23-25, and they probably say (to themselves and to others) things such as, "Well, those Bible verses can't be important or mean what they say, because John 3:16 means if someone believes in Jesus they will go to heaven." These kind of people refuse to admit that someone can believe in Jesus, but if they are not consciously or unconsciously (see the 6<sup>th</sup> point of chapter 6 of this book for more explanations) willing to be "committed" (John 2:24) to Him and "follow" (Matthew 16:24) Him after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian, they have the same kind of belief demons have (James 2:19).**

Jesus said in Matthew 16:25–26, "For whosoever will save his life shall lose it: and whosoever will lose his life for my sake shall find it. For what is a man profited, if he shall gain the whole world, and lose his own soul? Or what shall a man give in exchange for his soul?" Before someone gets saved, they need to consciously or unconsciously (see the 6<sup>th</sup> point of chapter 6 of

this book for more explanations) “lose” or “give up” every area of their life and be willing to let Jesus take over every area of their life (their thoughts, conversations with people who will listen (Deuteronomy 6:7 and see chapter 42 of this book for helpful information), what they watch and listen to (explained in chapter 23 of this book), where they go, what they spend their time doing each day, future goals, physical safety (Matthew 10:28), and the way they handle their money (see chapter 19 of this book)) after they accept Him as their Savior. **The purpose of life is for people to literally give up their lives and follow Jesus. (For an example of how to begin following Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.)** Just think how much better our world would be if more people lived this way. Life would become so less stressful if people would focus on doing this until they die, because this is why people are on earth. This is definitely something to think about before someone makes their decision to become a Christian. God gives people all these years on earth in order to test them to see if they will spend their time, other than work or school, etc., doing what they want to do or doing what Jesus wants them to do. Hebrews 11:24-26 has the same idea as Matthew 16:25-26 - Just like Moses could have done, we can spend our lives living like kings, or we can spend our lives following Jesus.

People should know what kind of lifestyle changes they will have before they decide to become a Christian, because they could turn back and become a mockery to God. Second Peter 2:21 declares, “For it had been better for them not to have known the way of righteousness, than, after they have known *it*, to turn from the holy commandment delivered unto them.” Also, see 2 Peter 2:10-22.

Usually someone tells a sinner what to believe about Jesus in order to go to heaven, and the sinner thinks to them self, “Sure, I’ll take five minutes out of my day and believe some facts about Jesus, then I will go back to what I was doing.” Then, the person witnessing or someone else comes along latter and tells the sinner that because they believe, they are now a servant of Jesus and His disciple, where they have to try to give up their time, other than work or school, etc., change their thoughts, conversations, the way they handle their money, physical safety (Matthew 10:28), future goals, and their old sinful actions. Then the sinner says, “I didn’t agree to any of that; I’m not going to live that way.” As a result, the sinner gives up on God and becomes a mockery to God (2 Peter 2:21). The person witnessing to the sinner should have told him or her

what they were getting into, and if the sinner didn't change his or her mind about becoming a Christian, they should trust Jesus' shed blood to save them and believe He arose from the dead.

(If you have never prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you haven't been living the way this chapter has explained, ask God to forgive you for this. Then, "from this moment on", try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) to begin living this way, with God helping you change.)

If in the future you haven't tried your absolute best to live this way, ask God to forgive you for that. After that, "from that moment on" try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) to begin living this way again, with God helping you change. (Continue to follow this pattern every time you fail to live this way.) (Please follow chapter 10 of this book for more information.)

## Chapter 5

### DOES THE BIBLE CONTRADICT ITSELF?

It seems there are people who believe that a person will go to hell if they witness to a lost person and say anything about repentance, discipleship, and Jesus' Lordship. They claim that person has added to the gospel, which is the death, burial, and resurrection of Jesus. These people basically claim that you are only allowed to tell a sinner that they need to believe Jesus died on the cross for our sins, was buried, and arose from the dead. They misinterpret that and claim if you add anything to that, you're accursed and are going to hell (Galatians 1:8-9). If that was true, Jesus and the apostle Paul, who wrote Galatians, would be in hell right now. The reason is because Jesus told people to follow (imitate and obey) Him without hesitation, and those who refused to begin living that new lifestyle missed heaven (explained in much of this book.) For another important note that people misinterpret, see the 15<sup>th</sup> indented paragraph of this chapter, beginning with this sentence, "In many churches, discipleship is not encouraged." Also, Jesus began His preaching ministry by proclaiming, "Repent: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand." (Matthew 4:17), and He said in Luke 13:5 "I tell you, Nay: but, except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish **go to hell**."

Repentance in the Bible is not just another word for believe (**see Mark 1:1-5**). John the Baptist (whose purpose was to prepare people for Jesus' coming by getting them to repent (Luke 1:16-17; 76-79)) said in Matthew 3:2, "And saying, Repent ye: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand." He then said in Matthew 3:7-8, "But when he saw many of the Pharisees and Sadducees come to his baptism, he said unto them, O generation of vipers, who hath warned you to flee from the wrath to come? Bring forth therefore fruits meet for repentance:" When John the Baptist said, "Bring forth therefore fruits meet for repentance:" - he meant that if someone repented (or changed, with God's help, and began to think and live the way God wants them to think and live), they will know it because they will begin to bear good fruit (becoming more holy in the way they live (They live a set-apart lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book.) (Romans 6:22), sharing their material possessions (Romans 15:28), having Jesus' character traits (Galatians 5:22-23), praising the Lord (Hebrews 13:15), answered prayer (1 John 5:14-15), and doing good works

(Colossians 1:10)). Contrast these things from the true character of the Pharisees laid out in Matthew 23:1-36.

According to some people's theology, the apostle Paul also added to the death, burial, and resurrection. The apostle Paul was witnessing to king Agrippa and said in Acts 26:19–20, “Whereupon, O king Agrippa, I was not disobedient unto the heavenly vision: But shewed first unto them of Damascus, and at Jerusalem, and throughout all the coasts of Judaea, and then to the Gentiles, that they should repent and turn to God, and do works meet for repentance.” If someone truly repents and turns to God (changes, with God's help, and begins to think and live the way God wants them to think and live), they will begin to do good works. (These are things such as: giving money to those who have needs (Luke 12:16-21), teaching people the Bible (Matthew 28:19), counseling with people who are having problems (Galatians 6:2), encouraging others (Hebrews 10:25), correcting believers when they sin (Galatians 6:1), and telling people how to become Christians (2 Timothy 4:5) by mouth, through email or social media, and/or by handing out or dropping off tracts that explain how to become a Christian in places like stores or restaurants where people can pick them up; feeding, clothing, and providing shelter and financial help for the less fortunate, and visiting people in hospitals and jails (Matthew 25:35-36; Mark 12:30-31; Titus 3:14); doing acts of kindness for people that will cause them to think good about God (for example - cooking, cleaning, doing yard work, helping shop, washing cars, fixing appliances) (Matthew 5:16; Titus 3:14).) One way someone can know if they have really received salvation is if they begin to do good works (James 2:17). Another way to explain this is that people must be willing to begin doing good works (following Jesus) after they accept Jesus as their Savior. I promise you, a major part of following Jesus is doing good works. While Jesus was on earth, He caused people to praise and think good about God by helping others (doing good works), and when He wasn't doing that, His mind was on the things of His Father. (See chapter 39 of this book for an example of what following this pattern looks like.) This is how someone needs to be consciously or unconsciously willing to begin living after they accept Jesus as their Savior. (If you read the 6<sup>th</sup> paragraph of chapter 2 of this book, you will see that someone can be unconsciously willing to begin following Jesus after they accept Him as their Savior and be prepared to become a Christian, but in the New Testament we see examples of people who consciously were not willing to follow Jesus “from that moment on and for the rest of their lives”. As a result, the people who turned away from Him gave up their chance to receive salvation at that time.) **Jesus repeatedly drove**

**thousands away from heaven because they were not willing to begin following (imitating and obeying) Him – (This is explained in chapters 6 and 7 of this book.)** Notice in Acts 26:19-20, Paul not only witnessed this way to king Agrippa, but to people in Damascus, Jerusalem, throughout all the coasts of Judaea, and then to the Gentiles.

Also, notice that Paul (along with Jesus in Mark 1:14-15 after Mark 1:1-5 establishes what repentance is) preached repentance before belief in Jesus when he first preached to those in Damascus, and at Jerusalem, and throughout all the coasts of Judaea, and then to the Gentiles (Acts 26:20). Then, he preached belief in Jesus to those people (Acts 26:22-23). Paul confirmed repentance before belief again in Acts 20:20-21 when he said, "And how I kept back nothing that was profitable unto you, but have shewed you, and have taught you publickly, and from house to house, Testifying both to the Jews, and also to the Greeks, repentance toward God, and faith toward our Lord Jesus Christ." When someone repents toward God, they are obviously willing to quit sinning on purpose after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian, because God hates sin so much that He can't even look at it (Isaiah 59:2). If someone is willing to begin living this way after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian, they are ready to become a Christian by letting God know that they have faith in the Lord Jesus Christ. Hebrews 6:1 also states, "Therefore leaving the principles of the doctrine of Christ, let us go on unto perfection; not laying again the foundation of repentance from dead works, and of faith toward God," **Notice that repentance from dead works (which are sins) comes before faith. Some church leaders would proclaim that someone is adding to the gospel (will go to hell) if they tell people that they need to repent (be willing to quit sinning, and if they are willing to try to avoid sinning for the rest of their life after they tell God that they believe Jesus is their Savior, they are ready to become a Christian by believing). Of course, Jesus was the only one who never sinned, but we should be willing to try to "follow" His example.**

Similarly, many probably claim that Jesus' close disciples were saved (became Christians) after they witnessed Jesus turn water into wine at the marriage of Cana, because John 2:11 says, "This beginning of miracles did Jesus in Cana of Galilee, and manifested forth his glory; and his disciples believed on him." I also believe that Jesus' close disciples could have been saved at that time, or they could have recognized that He was the Savior before they decided to leave all behind and follow Him. But, to put this into context with the rest of this chapter, chapters 6-7, and chapter

1 of this book, they clearly had desires to follow (imitate and obey) Jesus (which prepares someone's heart to receive Jesus) before they believed on Him and became saved. To compare the words 'and his disciples believed on him' with the words Paul and Silas proclaimed to the Philippian jailer in Acts 16:31, believing is what saves someone. (It's also very helpful to read Acts 16:16-34 to see how the jailer's heart was undoubtedly prepared to receive Jesus before he and his household accepted Jesus as their Savior.) So, it makes sense that Jesus' disciples were saved (became Christians) after they witnessed Jesus turn water into wine at the marriage of Cana.

In Acts 26:12-23, Paul tells king Agrippa his conversion story (Please see the notes that are underlined and in parenthesis.) – “Whereupon as I went to Damascus with authority and commission from the chief priests, At midday, O king, I saw in the way a light from heaven, above the brightness of the sun, shining round about me and them which journeyed with me. And when we were all fallen to the earth, I heard a voice speaking unto me, and saying in the Hebrew tongue, Saul, Saul, why persecutest thou me? *it is* hard for thee to kick against the pricks (It was useless for Paul to go against what Jesus wanted him to do, from that moment on.). And I said, Who art thou, Lord? And he said, I am Jesus whom thou persecutest. But rise, and stand upon thy feet: for I have appeared unto thee for this purpose, to make thee a minister and a witness both of these things which thou hast seen, and of those things in the which I will appear unto thee; Delivering thee from the people, and *from* the Gentiles, unto whom now I send thee, To open their eyes, *and* to turn *them* from darkness to light, and *from* the power of Satan unto God (Jesus wanted Paul to tell them that they needed to repent.), that they may receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among them which are sanctified by faith that is in me. (If they were willing to repent, they were ready to become Christians by having faith in Jesus.) Whereupon, O king Agrippa, I was not disobedient unto the heavenly vision: But shewed first unto them of Damascus, and at Jerusalem, and throughout all the coasts of Judaea, and *then* to the Gentiles, that they should repent and turn to God, and do works meet for repentance. (This is where Paul followed Jesus' instructions about repentance in verse 18 which says, “To open their eyes, *and* to turn *them* from darkness to light, and *from* the power of Satan unto God.”) For these causes the Jews caught me in the temple, and went about to kill *me*. Having therefore obtained help of God, I continue unto this day, witnessing both to small and great, saying none other things than those which the prophets and Moses did say should come: (Paul told them the same things the prophets and Moses said would describe the Messiah, and Paul gives this description in the next verse:) That Christ should suffer, *and* that he

should be the first that should rise from the dead, and should shew light unto the people, and to the Gentiles.” Acts 22:6-16 also outlines Paul's conversion to Christianity. In previous verses, Paul definitely didn't acknowledge Jesus as Lord, but after being blinded and hearing Jesus' words in verse 7, Paul was willing to do whatever Jesus told him (accepted Him as Lord), but he didn't become a Christian (have his sins washed away - verse 16) until he called on the name of the Lord (verse 16) - let God know that he believes Jesus is his Savior. After Paul asks Jesus who He is, Jesus tells him, and Paul asks, "What shall I do, Lord?" Today, before someone calls on the Lord to be saved, they should consciously or unconsciously be willing to follow Jesus (do what the Bible says to do and not do).

Paul stated two verses on how to obtain salvation that use the title ‘Lord’ in Acts 16:31 and Romans 10:9, and they both mean the same thing etymologically, contextually, and historically (and that is “God who rules”). Acts 16:31 says, “Believe on the Lord Jesus, and thou shalt be saved.” And in Romans 10:9 it says, “That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.” This doesn't mean if someone simply says Jesus' name and believes He arose from the dead, they will be saved. Someone needs to consciously or unconsciously (see the 6<sup>th</sup> point of chapter 6 of this book for more explanations) tell God that they are “willing” for Him to rule (or take over) every area of their life and every moment of each day “for the rest of their life”.

The Greek word for “Lord” is *kurios*. Dr. John MacArthur, in his book *The Gospel According to Jesus*, expounds on this very well. He said, “Proper understanding of any biblical term depends on etymology, context, and history. Etymologically, “*kurios*” comes from a Greek root that means “rule, dominion, or power.” Contextually, taking Peter's use of “*kurios*” in Acts 2:36, it is important to note that verses 34—35 quote from Psalm 110, a messianic psalm of rule and dominion (“Rule in the midst of Thine enemies,” v. 2). Peter was not saying merely that, “God has made Him . . . God,” he was affirming Jesus' right to rule. Historically, Peter's sermon addressed the Jews' role in crucifying their Messiah (v.23). At the trial of Jesus before Pilate and the Jewish mob, the issue was clearly His “kingship,” mentioned at least a dozen times in John 18:33—19:22. Clearly, careful historical-grammatical exegesis of Acts 2:36 can lead to only one conclusion: Jesus is the divine King who rules in the midst of both friends and foes. Having thus

identified Christ as Lord of all, Peter makes his gospel appeal. Note that Paul preached Jesus in exactly the same way (2 Cor. 4:3–5): Jesus is our sovereign Lord, and we are His servants.”

If you are reading this and aren't willing for Jesus to take over every area of your life (become your Lord) after you accept Him as your Savior, He will not become your Savior (“and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.”).

Obviously, someone isn't going to hell if they tell a sinner that they need to be willing to repent of their sins, be willing to follow Jesus, and be willing for Jesus to become the Lord of their life after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian. I promise you, Jesus and the apostle Paul are both in heaven right now! Jesus' death, burial, and resurrection are the core of the Christian faith, and we could never make it to heaven if Jesus hadn't conquered those things. However, that clearly doesn't mean that someone isn't allowed to mention repentance, following Jesus, and His right to become the Lord of someone's life. **(A quick note, Pauline dispensationalists teach that Jesus' and Peter's call to repentance (actually discipleship and Jesus' Lordship as well) doesn't apply to us, and belief in the death, burial, and resurrection of Jesus is the only gospel message for our time. Although, 2 Corinthians 11:4, 12-15 reveals that one gospel message doesn't replace another gospel message, and 1 Corinthians 15:10-11 teaches that all the apostles preached the same gospel.)** Some people in Paul's time added to the death, burial, and resurrection by claiming that people had to believe that and also be circumcised and keep all the other Jewish laws and ceremonies without one mistake in order to get saved. Galatians 4:10 proclaims that someone who does that is trying to earn grace. Galatians 5:4 adds that those who try to make themselves right with God by keeping the Jewish laws are cut off from Christ. However, telling people they need to be willing to repent of their sins, be willing to follow Jesus, and be willing for Jesus to become the Lord of their life is not adding to the apostle Paul's gospel. (In 1 Timothy 1:9-11, Paul himself listed numerous sins that he explained are 'contrary to sound doctrine; According to the glorious gospel of the blessed God, which was committed to my trust.' So, in these verses did Paul add to the death, burial, and resurrection of Jesus (the gospel)?) The truth is that if you are reading this and aren't willing to begin living this lifestyle (See chapter 39 of this book for an example of what this looks like.) after you trust Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and believe He arose from the dead, you aren't ready to accept Him as your true Savior - The soil of your heart isn't prepared to receive

Jesus (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of this book). If you have read chapter 1 of this book, you will see that being willing to repent, being willing to follow Jesus, and being willing for Jesus to become the Lord of someone's life basically have the same meaning.

In many churches, discipleship is not encouraged. Many church leaders look at the invitations Jesus gave during His time on earth for people to deny themselves, take up their crosses, and follow Him, and they say things such as, "When Jesus was on earth and was wanting people to become His disciples, all of them had to become homeless and go town to town in order to witness, preach, teach, and perform miracles. Nevertheless, that doesn't apply to us today, so all we have to do is trust Jesus' work on the cross to save us by grace." When people define discipleship and what it means to follow Jesus this way, it does seem that discipleship doesn't apply to us today. However, God hasn't called everyone to become homeless and go town to town in order to witness, preach, teach, and perform miracles like a modern day missionary and evangelist. It is also true that God didn't call everyone in Jesus' day to do all those things either. Luke 8:26-39 proves this. In this event, Legion wanted to travel with Jesus for the rest of his life, but Jesus wanted him to return to his home and tell how much God had done for him (Luke 8:39). God had planned for Legion to witness to the people who saw him in the horrible condition he used to be in, so God would be glorified and people would come to Christ. Therefore, this proves that God hasn't planned for everyone to go town to town in order to preach and teach like Jesus did. Ephesians 4:11 also proves this and says, "And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers;" Clearly, God has called many people to be pastors and have families (for example) in our day and time, and they aren't able to become homeless in order to minister everywhere. Many pastors today do follow (imitate and obey) Jesus and prove to be saved, even though they don't live the aforementioned lifestyle. Therefore, discipleship and following Jesus shouldn't be defined as, "becoming homeless and going town to town in order to witness, preach, teach, and perform miracles."

Unfortunately, there are likely to be people who will read this and continue to go to great lengths and great expense to discourage others from these truths and try to convince people that if they have said a prayer and believed - they are saved and shouldn't doubt it, even if they haven't turned from their sins and just give the Lord about an hour of their time each week. The results will be tragic, because those listeners with itching ears, "For the time will come when they will

not endure sound doctrine; but after their own lusts shall they heap to themselves teachers, having itching ears; And they shall turn away *their* ears from the truth, and shall be turned unto fables.” (2 Timothy 4:3-4), will buy into this theory and end up being eternally separated from God. Those with itching ears, who aren't willing to give Jesus their all and will turn their ears from the truth, will greatly admire people who preach this way, but their teaching and preaching isn't God's message.

If these people are so determined to preach like the apostle Paul did, why would they leave out important statements Paul made like in Acts 26:19–20, Acts 20:20-21, and Romans 10:9, and their true meaning? They may also use Bible verses like John 3:16 to convince people to not pay attention to other verses. People who read John 3:16 can be saved if their hearts are prepared to receive Jesus (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of this book), but notice four verses after that, John 3:20 says, “For every one that doeth evil hateth the light, neither cometh to the light, lest his deeds should be reprov'd.” Someone can believe in Jesus, but if they aren't willing to turn from their sins, they will not come to the light and be saved. Also, someone can believe in Jesus, but if that belief doesn't result in good works (with the exception of those who get saved but don't live long after that or people who are in bad health and can't get out and do much, etc.) and a changed life, they aren't saved because they have a dead faith (James 2:20). These speakers may not even bother using the Bible. All they have to do is make a sarcastic remark and roll their eyes and ask the audience, “How many of us are saved?” Then, the speaker will raise his hand in order to get everyone in the audience to do the same, without ever encouraging them to study sections in the Bible like First John to see if they are really saved. They may also roll their eyes and make a sarcastic remark about Jesus' Lordship, which will get others to ignore large portions of the Bible. Someone may also try to lessen the meaning of 2 Corinthians 5:17 and claim that no one really lives that way. When people do such things, Christians should do what Paul said in 1 Thessalonians 5:21, “Prove all things; hold fast that which is good.” If someone tries to get people to buy into things that aren't biblical, Christians shouldn't agree with it. Jesus' Parable of the Wheat and Tares (Matthew 13:24-30; 36-43) proves that this kind of thing is a reality. And yes, Jesus was very hard on the Pharisees during His time on earth and was successful in disproving their theories. **Also, in 1 Corinthians 5:12-13 Paul teaches that church members should remove people from their churches who claim to be Christians, but they refuse to stop their evil ways. This definitely includes proven false teachers who are pastors and Sunday school teachers. Second John**

1:10 plainly explains that false teachers shouldn't be welcomed. Verse 11 adds that those who bid God speed to these teachers (encourage them to continue their false teaching and give them the green light to do so) are actually partakers of their evil deeds. Therefore, I am encouraging the readers of this book to remove (1 Corinthians 5:2,7) false teachers from their churches - Second John 1: 9-11; 2 Corinthians 6:14-16; 2 Corinthians 11:3-6,12-15; 1 Timothy 1:3; 3:1-10; Ephesians 5:8-14; and 2 Peter 2:1-3 are some verses that are opposed to false teachers. From my experiences, there are pastors and Sunday school teachers who try very hard to get people to ignore Jesus' right to become the Lord of their lives. (If you have read chapter 1 of this book, you will see this ties into repentance and discipleship as well.) They also conveniently state things such as that Paul's only message to the Corinthians (and us) was that they needed to believe Jesus died for their sins (1 Corinthians 2:2), and they leave out everything Paul said about repentance (Acts 26:20, for example). That is strong evidence that they may be false teachers. Second Peter 3:16 warns of people who twisted Paul's letters to mean things that Paul didn't intend for them to mean. The devil also quoted Scripture in order to twist God's Word while he was tempting and trying to fool Jesus in the wilderness, but Jesus wasn't fooled and responded in kind with a different Scripture (See Matthew 4:6-7). Some Christians are able to pick up on such tactics, because they are gifted with the ability to figure out if a message is from the Spirit of God or another spirit (1 Corinthians 12:10). In Acts 20:25-31, Paul, before his departure, warned of people in the church who distort the truth and in Romans 16:17-18 warned of those who deceive innocent people through smooth talk contrary to sound doctrine. Christians should rigorously compare the teachings of speakers to what is written in the Bible (1 Thessalonians 5:20-22). Jude 1:3-4 adds that Christians should defend the Bible and alert the church of ungodly people who have made their way into churches, who claim that God's marvelous grace allows Christians to live immoral lives. In Revelation 2:2, Jesus commended the church in Ephesus for examining the claims of professed apostles who were exposed and proved to be liars. Titus 1:9 also talks of Christians encouraging others with wholesome teaching and biblically explaining to those who oppose the teaching how they are wrong. Not only is it biblical to remove proven false teachers from churches, but Christians are allowed to explain to those around them, while addressing the person who is in error, how that person is incorrect on a biblical matter (see Galatians 2:11-21). I think a lot of people overlook Galatians 2:11-21 -

**Paul called Peter a hypocrite for his actions. As a result, other Jewish Christians followed Peter's bad example, and even Barnabas was led astray by their hypocrisy. Paul also did this right in front of those who were around. Today, somebody more than likely would have jumped on Paul and quoted 1 Corinthians 16:14, "Let all your things be done with charity." By doing this, they could imply that Paul was doing this out of hatred and wasn't really a Christian. Paul obviously didn't hate Peter, but Peter made a serious mistake, and his mistake was causing great harm. Therefore, this had to be strongly dealt with. Many church leaders don't make the same mistake as Peter, but when someone is successfully convincing groups of people that everyone who says a prayer to become a Christian goes to heaven, opposes assurance of salvation verses, and they are against biblical repentance (To see what I'm talking about, see this chapter, chapter 1, and other chapters of this book.), someone needs to boldly speak up, and as in Titus 1:13-14, people need to be sternly warned. (A mature Christian shouldn't be influenced when people try to trick them with clever lies that sound like the truth (Ephesians 4:14).) If Paul made that sobering comment to Peter in front of others, why couldn't someone ask, "This teaching is false; do you want people to go to heaven or hell?" Also, Peter didn't retaliate by uniting a coalition against Paul and got people to hate him. Paul's stern command in Titus 1:10-14 should be examined as well. Last but not least, 2 Timothy 4:14-15 reveals that Christians are allowed to broadcast the names of people who try corrupt God's Word and the message of salvation.**

For many, the Bible seems to contradict itself because pastors repeatedly proclaim how simple the gospel is, in that all people have to do is believe the facts about Jesus. So when members of congregations hear or read anything that has to do with true repentance or being willing to follow Jesus (as previously explained), they automatically ignore that and think back to how easy the gospel is. Pastors frequently mention that the gospel is so easy that a child can understand it, but the emphasis should be on a child. Unlike those who have heard in nearly every church service for decades how evil repentance, being willing to follow Jesus, and Jesus' Lordship are—children have not. The Bible is new to them. In Mark 10:15 Jesus said, "Verily I say unto you, whosoever shall not receive the kingdom of God as a little child, he shall not enter therein." This means people need to have child-like faith. As we all know, a child will pretty much believe anything you tell them, and they don't debate it in their minds. They accept it by faith. As discussed before, some claim if someone witnesses to others and mentions anything other than the death, burial, and

resurrection of Jesus, they will go to hell. Those who hold that view are forced into stating that they believe Jesus and the apostle Paul are in hell. Obviously, that isn't true. Being willing to repent, follow Jesus, and being willing for Jesus to become the Lord of your life basically mean the same thing (see chapter 1 of this book). So, the correct way to present salvation to a child is to tell them if they want to, from this moment on and with God's help, try their best to begin following Jesus (whenever they aren't helping others, they try to think about things that God wants them to think about and try to live the way the Bible says to live), they are ready to tell God that they believe Jesus died on the cross to erase their sins so they can go to heaven and believe Jesus arose from the dead. Of course they need to grow in their new walk with Christ, and they will never be perfect. This is obviously simple to understand, and someone obviously won't go to hell for telling people that they need to be willing to follow Jesus, because that is clearly Jesus' message.

Many would probably claim that a simple message like that is claiming that someone has to do good works to be saved. If I told you that after you follow Jesus, you then become a Christian, I would have told you that you need to do good works to be saved. Although, the point I'm trying to make is that a person needs to be "willing from this moment on and for the rest of their life" to begin following Jesus after they trust His death on the cross to erase their sins and let them into heaven and believe He arose from the dead. This prepares a person's heart to receive Jesus (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of this book), so when they tell God that they believe Jesus died on the cross to erase their sins, it will more than likely result in salvation. They will very likely not go back to their old lifestyle (Luke 9:61-62), because they counted the cost and knew what they were getting into (Luke 14:25-35) before they asked Jesus into their heart, believed Jesus is their Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase their sins and let them into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc. A lot of people who make a profession of faith don't consider this. They have the idea that they will believe in Jesus and receive their "get out of hell free card" while continuing to spend the same amount of hours texting their friends about the latest gossip and keeping their rude and sarcastic personalities. The pastors who put so much emphasis on "their view of grace", lead people to believe that it is perfectly fine to believe some facts and continue to do as they please. Does the Bible teach this? No, it doesn't. Titus 2:11-12 declares, "For the grace of God that bringeth salvation hath appeared to all men, Teaching us that, denying ungodliness and worldly lusts, we should live soberly, righteously, and godly, in this present world;" Yes, hell is occupied with multitudes who made professions of faith with the idea

that they would basically continue to live the way they always have but go to heaven when they die.

Many may also think that 1 Corinthians 3:15 contradicts James 2:26 and Titus 1:16 when someone claims that people who make professions of faith but never have major changes in the way they live and do good works afterwards are really saved, because they will quote 1 Corinthians 3:15, "If any man's work shall be burned, he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved; yet so as by fire."

Although, they don't seem to include 1 Corinthians 3:5-15 which says, "Who then is Paul, and who *is* Apollos, but ministers by whom ye believed, even as the Lord gave to every man? I have planted, Apollos watered; but God gave the increase. So then neither is he that planteth any thing, neither he that watereth; but God that giveth the increase. Now he that planteth and he that watereth are one: and every man shall receive his own reward according to his own labour. For we are labourers together with God: ye are God's husbandry, *ye are* God's building. According to the grace of God which is given unto me, as a wise masterbuilder, I have laid the foundation, and another buildeth thereon. But let every man take heed how he buildeth thereupon. For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ. Now if any man build upon this foundation gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, stubble; Every man's work shall be made manifest: for the day shall declare it, because it shall be revealed by fire; and the fire shall try every man's work of what sort it is. If any man's work abide which he hath built thereupon, he shall receive a reward. If any man's work shall be burned, he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved; yet so as by fire."

These verses are referring to Christians who are pastors, teachers, people with the gift of evangelism, and people who are called to build the church through faithful ministry, etc. The gold, silver, and precious stones are referring to Christians who are pastors, teachers, people with the gift of evangelism, and people who are called to build the church through faithful ministry, etc. who are dedicated and really search the Bible to learn how to help others. As a result, the people they minister to become Christians and go on to minister to other people, for example, and these Christians are rewarded for this in heaven (see 2 Corinthians 5:9-11). The wood, hay, and stubble represent Christians who are pastors, teachers, people with the gift of evangelism, and people who are called to build the church through faithful ministry, etc. who, on certain occasions, are lazy

and don't try hard to search the Bible to learn how to help others. These Christians who are pastors, teachers, people with the gift of evangelism, and people who are called to build the church through faithful ministry, etc., who **perform lazy attempts** of good works, will have those **lazy attempts of good works burnt up, but they will enter heaven. They will not be rewarded for those lazy attempts of good works at the judgment seat of Christ.** Besides, the Bible would contradict itself because of James 2:26 and Titus 1:16.

(If you have never prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you haven't been living the way this chapter has explained, ask God to forgive you for this. Then, "from this moment on", try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) to begin living this way, with God helping you change.)

If in the future you haven't tried your absolute best to live this way, ask God to forgive you for that. After that, "from that moment on" try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) to begin living this way again, with God helping you change. (Continue to follow this pattern every time you fail to live this way.) (Please follow chapter 10 of this book for more information.)

## Chapter 6

### IS BEING WILLING TO FOLLOW JESUS NECESSARY?

If someone's heart is not already stirred so much that they are willing to give Jesus their best no matter what, you are probably wondering if someone has to be consciously willing to begin following Jesus (Following (imitating and obeying) Jesus doesn't always mean becoming homeless and going town to town in order to preach and teach (See the 15<sup>th</sup> indented paragraph of chapter 5 of this book beginning with this sentence, "In many churches, discipleship is not encouraged.".) after they accept Him as their Savior if they want to become a Christian. (For an example of what it looks like to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.) Consider the following:

1. A lot of people are familiar with gospel tracts (small pamphlets that people pass out that explain how someone can become a Christian). These tracts are handy, and many have become Christians by reading them. However, the Bible teaches that a general outline doesn't work for every sinner. The Rich Young Man in Mark 10:17-25 is a perfect example of this. I have read enough gospel tracts and heard enough sermons to know that the Rich Young Man in these verses would have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian if he had read a gospel tract or heard a general sermon from our day and time, and the pastor or the person who handed out the tract would have probably promised the Rich Young Man that he was going to heaven. To summarize most tracts, sinners must understand that they have sinned, they must believe that Jesus died on the cross to pay for their sins and arose from the dead, and they must receive Jesus as their Savior by praying a sinner's prayer.

In Mark 10:17–22 the Rich Young Man came to Jesus seeking salvation, but Jesus knew his heart. It seems that Jesus was going to grant him salvation if he sold his possessions and gave to the poor, but that wasn't the case. Jesus set two ways of life before him and made him make a choice. The Rich Young Man could either take up his cross (be willing to identify with Jesus everywhere he went) and follow Jesus in every area of his life, or he could control his own life. The Rich Young Man may have been willing to follow Jesus in different areas of his life, but he wasn't willing to follow Jesus in giving. This is why we

should explain to people who are interested in becoming Christians what it means to be willing to follow Jesus "from this moment on and for the rest of their lives", instead of just telling them to believe that Jesus died on the cross for their sins and arose from the dead. (For outlines to help you lead people to Jesus, see chapters 26-32 of this book.) The Rich Young Man wasn't willing to sell his possessions and give to the poor after Jesus told him to do that, but Jesus said that to test his heart - The Rich Young Man wanted to spend more of his time, thoughts, and effort toward his possessions and money, and he wasn't willing to spend more of his time "from that moment on" following Jesus (helping others, and when he wasn't doing that, thinking like Jesus thought). Not only was he not willing to take up his cross and follow Jesus (Mark 10:21), he wasn't willing to "deny himself", and take up his cross daily, and follow Jesus (Luke 9:23). He wasn't willing to "deny" his time, thoughts, and energy toward "his" wants. As a result, the Rich Young Man didn't get saved. The Rich Young Man simply couldn't serve two masters (Matthew 6:24).

2. Jesus met with three possible followers in Luke 9:57–62, and they weren't willing to live the type of lifestyles He was calling them to live. The first man wasn't willing to be without a home and follow Jesus. The second man wanted to wait until his father had passed away before he began to follow Jesus and preach the kingdom of God to others. The final man didn't want to completely leave his old lifestyle, and Jesus knew he would serve others but would turn back. As a result, all three men turned back and didn't get saved. Jesus doesn't call all of us to become homeless in order to follow Him, but He does expect us to begin following Him after we accept Him as our Savior. The men in these verses would have more than likely prayed a prayer to believe in Jesus (like many do today), but they weren't willing to begin following Jesus (live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book) after they accepted Him as their Savior. As a result, they turned away from Jesus and gave up their chance to become Christians. It does seem, however, that these men had become Christians, because they called Jesus 'Lord' and recognized that He was worthy to be followed. Although, these men had the same kind of faith of those in John 2:23-26 (see the 4<sup>th</sup> point in this chapter).
3. Jesus' close disciples who changed the world wouldn't have been saved if they'd said, "No, we just want to believe in You and stay here and be fisherman, even though You told us to follow.

4. John 2:23–25 reveals, “Now when he was in Jerusalem at the passover, in the feast *day*, many believed in his name, when they saw the miracles which he did. But Jesus did not commit himself unto them, because he knew all *men*, And needed not that any should testify of man: for he knew what was in man.” Many believed in Jesus because of the miracles He performed, but He knew they weren't willing to be "committed" to Him and become His disciples. These people just believed with their minds, and they weren't willing to spend their time telling people how to become Christians and/or doing other things to help others, and when they weren't doing that, spend the rest of their time thinking and talking like Jesus. As a result, they didn't get saved.
5. One of Jesus' most well-known miracles was when He feed 5,000 people with five barley loaves and two small fishes (Only the men were counted, so if the women and children were counted, there would have been a lot more present.), which is recorded in John 6:1-14. Actually, the entire 6<sup>th</sup> chapter of John records events that happened one right after the other, so check that out. The same multitude that were fed were addressed by Jesus in John 6:26–66. This group turned away from following Jesus because they thought He was going to be a conquering Messiah, He refused to give in to their self-centered desires (People were following Him to gain prestige, popularity, and possibly political votes from others. They weren't willing to follow Him for the right reasons. They should have been willing to imitate Jesus so others would see their good works and think good about God (Matthew 5:16) and want to become Christians too.), He emphasized faith and not deeds in order to be saved, and His teaching was hard to understand and was offensive to them. Today, just like these people, many want to ignore certain verses they don't like (ex. Luke 9:23: "And he said to *them* all, If any *man* will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross daily, and follow me.") and just focus on verses that mention believing. The more they heard Jesus' message, the more they divided themselves into two different groups: The first group involved the true seekers who wanted to understand more of Jesus' truths (Jesus' original eleven disciples plus Judas who later betrayed Him), and the second group involved those who rejected Jesus and turned away. As a result, the second group gave up their chance to receive salvation at that time.
6. In Jesus' day multitudes followed Him around and admired seeing Him perform miracles, such as the feeding of the five thousand which was just mentioned. Jesus welcomed

multitudes, but He didn't hesitate to tell them what they were getting themselves into (Luke 14:25-35). Those who never follow (with the exception of people who don't live long after they get saved or aren't physically and/or mentally able due to bad health, etc.) or refuse to begin to follow Jesus, whether consciously or unconsciously, do not become Christians. If you read the 6<sup>th</sup> paragraph of chapter 2 of this book, you will see that someone can be unconsciously willing to begin following Jesus after they accept Him as their Savior and be prepared to become a Christian. In the New Testament, we see examples of people who consciously were not willing to follow Jesus "from that moment on and for the rest of their lives", and they gave up their chance to receive salvation at that time. Most likely, this was their only chance, especially after seeing Jesus face to face. We know this because in the Upper Room during Pentecost, only about an hundred and twenty disciples (Acts 1:15) were present including Jesus' original 11 disciples. (The number was 11 because Judas had betrayed Jesus and had died before this event.) In another instance, 1 Corinthians 15:6 says, "After that, he was seen of above five hundred brethren at once; of whom the greater part remain unto this present, but some are fallen asleep." These were disciples who saw Jesus after His resurrection. The point is that thousands of people turned away, gave up on Jesus, and didn't endure to the end. "And ye shall be hated of all *men* for my name's sake: but he that endureth to the end shall be saved." (Matthew 10:22). So, we know many thousands admired Jesus and followed Him around, but only hundreds (a small minority) proved to possess salvation. Compared with the five previous points, that seems accurate, because Jesus (mentioning how many actually enter heaven) said in Matthew 7:14, "Because strait *is* the gate, and narrow *is* the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it."

(If you have never prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you haven't been living the way this chapter has explained, ask God to forgive you for this. Then, "from this moment on", try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) to begin living this way, with God helping you change.)

If in the future you haven't tried your absolute best to live this way, ask God to forgive you for that. After that, "from that moment on" try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) to begin living this way again, with God helping you change. (Continue to follow this pattern every time you fail to live this way.) (Please follow chapter 10 of this book for more information.)

## Chapter 7

### IS FOLLOWING “FROM THIS MOMENT ON” NECESSARY?

By now, you should know that being consciously or unconsciously (see the 6<sup>th</sup> point of chapter 6 of this book for more explanations) willing to follow Jesus prepares someone’s heart to receive Jesus. But, does someone have to be willing to follow “from this moment on”? Being willing to follow Jesus “from this moment on” means that you want to begin following Jesus (living a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book) for the rest of your life, and you “will” try your best to “do” that “after” you pray or make a decision to become a Christian. There is nothing that someone can literally or physically “do” in order to get saved, but after reading the two previous chapters, someone has to be “willing” or “wants to” begin following Jesus (living a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book) after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian, instead of just “believing” the facts about Jesus’ death on the cross with their “mind”. A perfect example of this is James 2:18-19 which says, “Yea, a man may say, Thou hast faith, and I have works: shew me thy faith without thy works, and I will shew thee my faith by my works. Thou believest that there is one God; thou doest well: the devils also believe, and tremble.” Demons believe and even tremble due to their convictions, but they clearly have no desire to begin doing good works (follow/live like Jesus lived).

The two previous chapters have several examples that not only prove that repentance, being willing to follow Jesus, and being willing for Jesus to become the Lord of a person’s life prepares their heart to receive salvation, but they prove the “from this moment on” philosophy. Luke 18:18–30, Luke 9:57–62, John 2:23-24, John 6:26–66, and Luke 9:23–26 proves this to be true. In another instance, Paul was witnessing to king Agrippa in Acts 26:19–20 and said, “Whereupon, O king Agrippa, I was not disobedient unto the heavenly vision: But shewed first unto them of Damascus, and at Jerusalem, and throughout all the coasts of Judaea, and *then* to the Gentiles, that they should repent and turn to God, and do works meet for repentance.” If king Agrippa truly repented (changed, with God’s help, and began to think and live the way God wanted him to think and live), he would have known it because he would have begun to do good works and have good actions. He needed to be willing to begin doing good works after he accepted Jesus as his Savior (repent –

Acts 26:20). King Agrippa wasn't willing to live that way "from that moment on", and he wasn't willing to believe, "That Christ should suffer, *and* that he should be the first that should rise from the dead, and should shew light unto the people, and to the Gentiles." (Acts 26:23), even though the prophets and Moses prophesied that. As a result, king Agrippa didn't get saved. We know this because he said in Acts 26:28, "Almost thou persuadest me to be a Christian." Also, in Acts 24:24-25 it says, "And after certain days, when Felix came with his wife Drusilla, which was a Jewess, he sent for Paul, and heard him concerning the faith in Christ. And as he reasoned of righteousness, temperance, and judgment to come, Felix trembled, and answered, Go thy way for this time; when I have a convenient season, I will call for thee." After Felix heard Paul talk about righteousness, temperance, and the importance of becoming a Christian before it is too late, Felix wasn't willing "from that moment on" to begin living righteously, have self-control, or trust Jesus to save him. As a result, Felix didn't get saved, and he would never be saved if he wasn't willing to repent of his sins "from that moment on."

Even though it is clear that "from this moment on" is necessary, there are instances when people think about their decision (count the cost) and later decide to accept Jesus as their Savior. A prime example of this is John 3:1-21. Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a ruler of the Jews, came to Jesus at night and was interested in Him, but he wasn't able to understand Jesus' message at that time. He also had to know that if he began to follow Jesus, the other Pharisees would greatly persecute him and possibly put him out of the synagogue. Even though Nicodemus didn't follow Jesus "from that moment on", he later did when he helped bury Jesus after He died on the cross, and Nicodemus did this right in front of the Pharisees. It is really common in today's time for people to attend church, know they need to become saved, and weeks later go forward during the invitation to receive Christ.

Although, when someone does decide they want to become a Christian, they shouldn't have the idea that they will believe and not get in a hurry to change and try to follow Jesus (live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book). Jesus didn't take that approach while He was on earth. Those who were thinking about following Jesus should have realized that Jesus was going to take over their lives, and if they weren't willing to live that way "from that moment on", they were wasting their time (Luke 14:25-35). Matthew 10:39 has the same idea, and Jesus said, "He that findeth his life shall lose it: and he that loseth his life for my sake shall find

it.” Also, in Luke 13:24 Jesus said, “Strive to enter in at the strait gate: for many, I say unto you, will seek to enter in, and shall not be able.” It is true that we have to grow once we become Christians, and we’ll never be perfect. But if we have the idea that we aren’t going to try our best “from that moment on” to follow Jesus, we are wasting our time.

(If you have never prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you haven't been living the way this chapter has explained, ask God to forgive you for this. Then, “from this moment on”, try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) to begin living this way, with God helping you change.)

If in the future you haven't tried your absolute best to live this way, ask God to forgive you for that. After that, “from that moment on” try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) to begin living this way again, with God helping you change. (Continue to follow this pattern every time you fail to live this way.) (Please follow chapter 10 of this book for more information.)

## Chapter 8

### WHICH ROAD ARE YOU ON?

There are two types of people - "Enter ye in at the strait gate: for wide *is* the gate, and broad *is* the way, that leadeth to destruction, and many there be which go in thereat: Because strait *is* the gate, and narrow *is* the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it." (Matthew 7:13–14)

1. Those who are on the broad road (the broad way) are guilty of all (or some of) the following things - They spend their time doing what they want to do and not what God wants them to do, even if they have already prayed or made decisions to become Christians. They still practice sins on purpose, control the way they handle their money, plans of each day, future goals, physical safety (Matthew 10:28), and enjoy someone or something more than telling people how to become Christians and/or doing other things to help others, and when they aren't doing that, thinking about the things of God. They spend their time thinking, saying, watching and listening to (See chapter 23 of this book.), going where, and doing what they want instead of what the Lord wants for them. They also spend a lot of their time trying to show off things they have and/or by the way they look and talking about and planning how and when they will commit sexual acts with someone other than their spouse. It's also impossible to deny that we are living in the last days; Jesus is coming soon. Second Timothy 3:1-5 confirms, "This know also, that in the last days perilous times shall come. For men shall be lovers of their own selves, covetous, boasters, proud, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, unthankful, unholy, Without natural affection, trucebreakers, false accusers, incontinent, fierce, despisers of those that are good, Traitors, heady, highminded, lovers of pleasures more than lovers of God; Having a form of godliness, but denying the power thereof: from such turn away." Notice how 2 Timothy 3:1-5 matches up to how most people live today. Obviously, we are living in the last days, and Jesus said, "broad *is* the way, that leadeth to destruction, and many there be which go in thereat:". This is more evidence that people who live these type of lifestyles define the broad road. (If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins

and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have been living this way, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

2. Those who are on the narrow road (the narrow way) have prayed or made decisions to become Christians, and as a result, they follow Jesus. Chapter 39 of this book gives a visual summary/example of what the narrow road is like.

Jesus said, "broad *is* the way, that leadeth to destruction," so if you haven't prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, you need to be willing to begin living the way the narrow road just explained (a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book) after you pray or make a decision to become a Christian. After your heart is prepared to receive Jesus (the Parable of the Sower - Matthew 13:1–23), you are ready to tell God that you believe Jesus died on the cross to erase your sins so you can go to heaven and that you believe He arose from the dead. Please realize that once you start down the narrow road, your life will be loaded with trials, suffering, persecution: "Yea, and all that will live godly in Christ Jesus shall suffer persecution." (2 Timothy 3:12), possible loss of friends, and the temptation to spend your time thinking about, talking about, watching and listening to (see chapter 23 of this book.), and doing what God hates. Luke 13:22–24 declares, "And he went through the cities and villages, teaching, and journeying toward Jerusalem. Then said one unto him, Lord, are there few that be saved? And he said unto them, Strive to enter in at the strait gate: for many, I say unto you, will seek to enter in, and shall not be able." If you aren't willing to begin living the way the narrow road explains (living a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book) after you pray or make a decision to become a Christian, you aren't ready to believe and be saved. The man literally asked Jesus, "Are there few that are being saved?" So, the reason few get saved is because they don't strive to enter in at the straight gate. **(They need to be very willing to get on the narrow road and begin living the way it explains after they pray or make decisions to become Christians (A visual summary/example of what this involves is explained in chapter 39 of this book.), no matter who or what circumstances try to stop them, then they are ready to believe and be saved.)** Striving (trying very hard) to enter in at the straight gate doesn't mean believing that Jesus is your Savior, because many believe that. If that was true, just about everyone in the US will go to heaven. Although, Jesus taught that few will enter. The reason is because they don't strive to enter in at the straight gate, not because they don't believe in Jesus. (Also, see the 33<sup>rd</sup>-35<sup>th</sup> indented paragraphs

of chapter 1 of this book, beginning with this sentence, “People also have the idea that they will become Christians and maybe get around to following Jesus someday.”)

**A lot of people may ask, “Why do so many who make professions of faith, get baptized, and become members of churches all of a sudden go back to living their old lifestyles?” The answer to this question is that these people probably didn’t strive to enter in at the straight gate (Luke 13:22-24). If they would have counted the cost (Luke 14:25–35) and strived to enter in at the straight gate (Luke 13:22-24) before they trusted Jesus to save them, they more than likely wouldn’t have quit following Jesus (living the Christian lifestyle, see chapter 39 of this book), going to church, being on the narrow way which leadeth unto life (Matthew 7:13–14), and enduring to the end (Matthew 10:22).**

(If you have never prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you haven't been living the way this chapter has explained, ask God to forgive you for this. Then, “from this moment on”, try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) to begin living this way, with God helping you change.)

If in the future you haven't tried your absolute best to live this way, ask God to forgive you for that. After that, “from that moment on” try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) to begin living this way again, with God helping you change. (Continue to follow this pattern every time you fail to live this way.) (Please follow chapter 10 of this book for more information.)

## Chapter 9

### BEGINNING A BRAND-NEW LIFE

So before you make a decision to become a Christian or aren't sure you are a Christian, realize that after you pray, your new purpose in life is to follow Jesus. After you trust Jesus' shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believe He arose from the dead, He purchases you and your old life ends (Revelation 5:9). You then become a servant and a disciple (Luke 14:25–35) of Jesus for the rest of your life. To summarize Luke 14:25-35: Crowds were gathered around Jesus, and He taught them what kind of lifestyle they would have to live if they were to truly follow Him. They would have to love and spend so much more time with Him than their families, and even attention on themselves, as though it would seem they hate their families and themselves in comparison. (This doesn't mean that we can't watch sports, study the Bible, and enjoy the outdoors, etc. with them (because we can spend quality time thinking about the things of God while doing these things), but whenever we feel that the Lord is leading us to tell someone how to become a Christian, for example, we need to leave and do that.) Their life would be all about Him, and there wouldn't be much room for anything else. They would have to be willing to tell or show people that they stood with Jesus, even though they could suffer much verbal abuse and even be put to death for following Him. They would have to realize that they have to give up their time where He is not welcome, thoughts, conversations, the way they handle their money, physical safety (Matthew 10:28), what they watch and listen to, where they go, plans of each day, and future goals that do not involve Him. They would have to consider what they would be giving up before they began to follow Him. If they wouldn't give up everything, they would be worthless in following Him.

This is the definition of a disciple. A disciple is a Christian, and it is not optional. We know this because Jesus said in John 10:27–28 “My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me: And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any *man* pluck them out of my hand.” A follower of Jesus is a disciple says Mark 8:34, "And when he had called the people *unto him* with his disciples also (these were people who had already become Jesus' disciples), he said unto them, Whosoever will come after me, let him deny himself, and take

up his cross, and follow me." Some believe that being willing to become Jesus' disciple isn't necessary or important. How could that be when Acts 11:26 says, "... And the disciples were called Christians first in Antioch."? They were called **Christians** because their speech, activity, and behavior were like **Christ's**. (Notice the events recorded in Acts 11:20-30.) This is the definition of a disciple of Jesus Christ. Some also believe that when Jesus was talking about discipleship, He was only talking to people who were already saved. That wasn't the case; in Mark 2:17 Jesus said, "...They that are whole have no need of the physician, but they that are sick: I came not to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance." **You may not believe Mark 2:17 has anything to do with discipleship and being willing to follow Jesus, but if you have read chapter 1 of this book, you will see that being willing to follow Jesus and being willing to repent basically mean the same thing.** Jesus didn't come to earth to minister to those who were already righteous. So whenever He "had called the people *unto him* with his disciples also" (Mark 8:34), there definitely were plenty of lost people in the crowd. If these lost people were never willing to begin following Jesus (**or repent – Mark 2:17), they didn't receive salvation at that time. Also in a similar instance, Luke 14:25-35 announces that Jesus wasn't only addressing those who were already Christians.**

Also, in Jesus' Great Commission (Matthew 28:19) He said, "Go ye therefore, and teach all nations (which means make disciples), baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:" He didn't just say, "Go and make believers and baptize them." A believer is a disciple. All who repent are to be baptized (Acts 2:38). If the people whom Peter addressed in Acts 2:14-36 repented, they obviously had to believe that Jesus was their Savior after they heard Peter's sermon. So if Christians are supposed to make people disciples and baptize them, and only believers are to be baptized (Acts 2:38), that means a person should first be willing to begin living as Jesus' disciple for the rest of their life after they trust Jesus' work on the cross to save them and believe He arose from the dead (or repent, which basically means the same thing – see chapter 1 of this book). Then, they would be qualified to be baptized and thus obey Jesus' command.

Are you willing to truly begin living for Jesus until you leave this world? I know you are, or already were willing to believe in Jesus, but are you sorry for (2 Corinthians 7:10) and willing to repent of (turn from) your sins? Jesus said in Luke 13:5, "Except ye repent, ye shall all likewise

perish (go to hell)." So this is a requirement for getting into heaven. While the apostle Paul was in Athens waiting for Silas and Timotheus, Acts 17:16 records, "Now while Paul waited for them at Athens, his spirit was stirred in him, when he saw the city wholly given to idolatry." Acts 17:17-31 explains the strategy Paul used to try to lead these people to Jesus. Idolatry, like other things God hates, is sinful. If these people wanted to become Christians, they needed to be willing to stop committing idolatry (repent) after they accepted Jesus as their Savior. In Acts 17:29-31 Paul said, "Forasmuch then as we are the offspring of God, we ought not to think that the Godhead is like unto gold, or silver, or stone, graven by art and man's device (This is referring to their idolatry.). And the times of this ignorance God winked at; but now commandeth all men every where to repent: **(Notice that God "commands" all men every where to repent (Acts 17:30); repentance isn't optional. If these people weren't willing to repent (stop committing idolatry), they weren't ready to receive Jesus as their Savior.)** Because he hath appointed a day, in the which he will judge the world in righteousness by *that* man whom he hath ordained; *whereof* he hath given assurance unto all *men*, in that he hath raised him from the dead."

Most probably know that actions such as worshiping idols, lying, stealing, and killing are sins (The 10 Commandments), and if we have broken one, we are guilty of all (James 2:10). In spite of this, it is also a sin when someone spends their time, other than work or school, etc., **"doing" things that do not involve God** instead of **"doing" the type of things explained in chapter 39 of this book. Multitudes believe they can get saved and continue to live the same way they always have, with the exception of going to church every Sunday morning. Although, the Bible doesn't teach that.** (Galatians 5:24-25, "And they that are Christ's (going to heaven) have crucified the flesh with the affections and lusts. If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit.") (Galatians 6:8, "For he that soweth to his flesh (spends their time each day "doing" things that do not involve God) shall of the flesh reap corruption (go to hell); but he that soweth to the Spirit (spends their time each day "doing" the type of things explained in chapter 39 of this book) shall of the Spirit reap life everlasting (go to heaven).") When someone is "born again" or is a "new" creature in Christ (2 Corinthians 5:17), they will spend their time differently than they did before they were "born again" or a "new" creature in Christ. **There will be a big change over time.**

It is also a sin when someone spends their time, other than work or school, etc., **“thinking” about things that do not involve God** instead of **“thinking” the way explained in chapter 39 of this book. Many believe they can get saved and continue to plan how and when they will commit sexual acts with their girlfriend or boyfriend, think about how someone offended them, parts of the movie they saw last weekend that didn’t involve the things of God, or think of ways they can impress others. However, the Bible doesn't teach that.** (Romans 8:5-8, "For they that are after the flesh do mind the things of the flesh **(They spend their time each day “thinking” about things that do not involve God.)**; but they that are after the Spirit the things of the Spirit. **(They spend their time each day “thinking” similar to the way explained in chapter 39 of this book.)** For to be carnally minded *is* death **(go to hell)**; but to be spiritually minded *is* life and peace **(go to heaven)**. Because the carnal mind *is* enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be. So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God.") When someone is "born again" or is a "new" creature in Christ (2 Corinthians 5:17), they will spend their time thinking differently than they did before they were "born again" or a "new" creature in Christ. **There will be a big change over time.**

Not only these things, but are you willing to spend every moment of the day for the Lord? First Corinthians 10:31 says, "Whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God." This means everything you do during the day (eating, drinking, getting dressed, brushing your teeth, playing golf, driving, and working, etc.) should be done to please the Lord. While you are doing these things, you should try to thank God for the opportunity (1 Thessalonians 5:16-18), and think about Him (think about what you have read in the Bible (Psalm 119:15), pray (Matthew 6:9-13), and think about things such as a miracle you witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, or an act of kindness you witnessed or heard of, etc. (Philippians 4:8)). Even if you are watching a sporting event, you can do things such as thank God for gifting the athletes with such amazing ability (Philippians 4:8). God wants to be involved in everything you do each day.

**So the question is, “Are you willing to live the type of lifestyle explained in chapter 39 of this book?” The following paragraphs are basically identical to chapter 39:**

It definitely takes time to grow, and you will never be able to live for Jesus perfectly until you get to heaven. So don't be discouraged, but after you accept Jesus, do the best you can, and never give up!

Although you may not have the opportunity for all the following things, the following paragraphs give a visual/practical example of what it means to be willing to repent of your sins "from this moment on", be willing to follow (imitate and obey) Jesus "from this moment on" (Following (imitating and obeying) Jesus doesn't always mean becoming homeless and going town to town in order to preach and teach (explained in the 15th indented paragraph of chapter 5 of this book beginning with this sentence, "In many churches, discipleship is not encouraged."), and be willing for Jesus to become the Lord of your life "from this moment on". You don't have to try to fix your sinful habits before you become a Christian; you have to be sorry for your sins (2 Corinthians 7:10) and willing to live the type of lifestyle that is getting ready to be explained, and if you are willing to begin living this way after you pray to accept Jesus as your Savior, you are ready to trust Jesus' work on the cross to save you and believe He arose from the dead (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of this book). (There's a big difference.) **A simple summary of how you need to be willing to begin living after you tell God that you trust Jesus' work on the cross to save you and believe He arose from the dead is - when you don't feel that the Lord is wanting you to witness to and/or do other things to help others, you try to spend the rest of your time thinking about the things of God. You will see this pattern beginning with the next paragraph. Jesus also teaches us to count the cost (Luke 14:25–35), so the following outline also helps in doing this.)** Everyone isn't gifted in the same ways (For example, every Christian isn't a Bible teacher.), but the following outline basically covers every area of someone's life, broken down into separate paragraphs. The purpose of this outline isn't necessarily to make a promise to God, but it should give you better understanding. You are telling God the following things:

"I will from this moment on (because I'm thankful for Jesus dying on the cross to erase my sins and for all the things that are waiting for me in heaven, and I love Him more than anything or anyone (Psalm 139:23-24)), try very hard (Luke 13:22-24) to do things such as (while not doing them out of unwanted duty, explained in chapter 40 of this book) -

spend more of my money on things like evangelistic associations, charities, and things for God's purposes instead of entertainment (Technology items can be used and enjoyed for God's purposes,

and parts of movies, for example, can be enjoyed in order to glorify God.) and material things in order to show off and/or don't involve God (Matthew 6:19-21), if I have money left over from providing myself with food, clothing, and shelter, I'm willing to give to those who have needs (Luke 12:16-21) (Or, if it is an expensive need where a collection could be taken up, I want to ask the church that I attend or have supported financially to help meet their needs.), give offerings to my church every week (1 Corinthians 16:2);

teach the Bible (Matthew 28:19), counsel people who are having problems (Galatians 6:2), encourage others (Hebrews 10:25), correct believers when they sin (Galatians 6:1), and tell people how to become Christians (2 Timothy 4:5) by mouth, through email or social media, and/or by handing out or dropping off tracts that tell people how to become Christians in places like stores or restaurants where people can pick them up;

feed, clothe, and find shelter for the less fortunate, and visit people in hospitals and jails (Matthew 25:35-36; Mark 12:30-31; Titus 3:14);

do acts of kindness for others that will cause them to think good about You (for example, do the following for people - cook, clean, yard work, shop, wash cars, fix appliances) (Matthew 5:16; Titus 3:14);

**and when I don't feel that You are wanting me to do those type of things, I will try to do things such as -**

read through the Bible and do what it says to do and don't do what it says not to do (James 1:22);

think about what I've read (Psalm 119:15);

think about things such as a miracle I witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness I saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because You gifted them with that ability, or imagine what will be going on in heaven when I get there, etc. (Philippians 4:8);

pray how Jesus taught in Matthew 6:9-13 by (**admiring You, asking You to forgive me when I sin and try not to do it again** (especially every harsh or idle word I say which reveals the state of my heart (Matthew 12:33-37), and I can do wonderful things for You, but if I'm repeatedly, without remorse, and purposefully not patient (giving up living the Christian lifestyle when people and things are difficult, getting back at people who did wrong to me, and getting upset or flustered when I'm waiting on someone, for example), kind (helping those who have physical, mental, emotional, financial, or spiritual needs I come across), if I envy, brag, or I'm proud of my mind, body, accomplishments, and/or my possessions; think that I'm better and more important than others, rude, insist on my own way, irritable and/or resentful, rejoice at wrongdoing, dwell over/keep count of people's sins against me and hold grudges, have improper or dishonorable behavior, blame people for having evil desires or intentions behind what they do, don't think the best of people, don't try to cover people's faults (This doesn't apply to criminal activity.) and instead expose the wrong they did in order to make them look bad in front of others (The three previous descriptions that are underlined do not apply to possible false teachers – explained in much of chapter 5 of this book.), and don't continue to forgive people who sin against me and expect that You will work everything out right, the good things about me don't count (1 Corinthians 13:1-6). I will also try to rejoice about the good things of someone and won't believe they did wrong, but I will try to only believe they did wrong if there is impossible to deny evidence. (1 Corinthians 13:7)); **thank You for blessings and difficult circumstances (1 Thessalonians 5:18), and ask You to help me and others**);

talk about You and the Bible with people who will listen (Deuteronomy 6:7), say things that can help and encourage others and isn't perverted, hateful, foul, threatening, argumentative, prideful, rude, trying to make fun of others, etc. (Ephesians 4:29), talk about a miracle I witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness I saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because You gifted them with that ability, how beautiful the weather and scenery is because You made it that way, or what will be going on in heaven when we get there, etc. (Philippians 4:8);

attend church services I am able to attend in order to worship, fellowship, and learn (Hebrews 10:25);

try to do whatever the Holy Spirit gives me thoughts to say and do, no matter how challenging they may be or who or what tries to stop me (James 4:17);

try not to commit sinful actions and thoughts (Luke 13:3), such as lusting (For example, wanting (coveting) another man's wife should be avoided (Matthew 5:27-30), and it also becomes sinful when you plan how and when you will do any form of a sexual act (Ephesians 5:3) with someone you aren't married to (This is evil desire (Colossians 3:5) and impure thoughts (Philippians 4:8).) and carry those acts out (James 1:14-15). When you do these sexual acts, you give in to impurity (1 Thessalonians 4:7; Colossians 3:5) and aren't able to control your body in sanctification and honor (1 Thessalonians 4:3-5). If you aren't able to stop doing sexual acts, you should become married (1 Corinthians 7:9).), getting drunk (1 Corinthians 6:10), practicing homosexuality (Romans 1:26-28), thinking bad thoughts about others (1 Corinthians 13:1-7), talking bad about others (Romans 1:29), lying, and stealing), and avoid saying, thinking, and doing things I feel might be sinful (Isaiah 30:21; Romans 14:23);

**I'm willing to let Jesus become the Lord of my life (2 Corinthians 4:3-5; Romans 10:9; Acts 2:36) by taking over every "area" of my life from this moment on** - (the way I handle my money, the way I spend my time each day, thoughts, conversations with people who will listen (Deuteronomy 6:7 and see chapter 42 of this book for helpful information), what I watch and listen to (explained in chapter 23 of this book), where I go, try not to avoid witnessing to or helping others because I'm afraid of getting killed or robbed (Matthew 10:28), plans of each day, and future goals).

**I'm willing to let Jesus become the Lord of my life (2 Corinthians 4:3-5; Romans 10:9; Acts 2:36) by taking over every "moment" of my life from this moment on** - Whatever I do (eat, drink, get ready for work or school, drive, shop, play golf, watch a sporting event, or mow the lawn, etc.), I want to try to do it to please You and try to think about things such as what I've read in the Bible (Psalm 119:15); pray (Matthew 6:9-13); think about things such as a miracle I witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness I saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because You gifted them with that ability, or imagine what will be going on in heaven when I get there, etc. (Philippians 4:8) while I eat, drink, get ready for work or school, drive, shop, play golf, watch a sporting event, or mow the lawn, etc. (1 Corinthians 10:31).

I want to think, say, watch, listen to, go where, and do what Jesus wants me to do each day (Mark 8:34).

I "will" try to do these things no matter who or what circumstances try to stop me (Luke 13:24, Luke 9:62).

I want to try to obey Colossians 3:17 by before I say or do something to help someone, I want to tell You that I am doing it for the Lord Jesus, and I thank You for the opportunity. I don't only want to take care of people's needs by witnessing to and/or doing other things to help them, but the reason I want to do these things is so they will think good about You (Matthew 5:16).”

If you're willing to begin living the type of lifestyle that was just explained in the previous paragraphs after you pray the prayer that's featured after the next paragraph, your heart should be prepared to receive Jesus (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of this book), you know what you're getting yourself into (Luke 14:25–35), and you know you aren't going to change your mind and go back to living your old lifestyle (Luke 9:61–62). You don't have to try to memorize and have a perfect understanding of the previous paragraphs before you pray or make a decision to become a Christian, but understand that you need to be willing to live a new lifestyle. (Sometimes things will be amazing, and sometimes things will be difficult. But nothing compares to heaven's perfection.)

Now, you're ready to tell God that you trust Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven, and you believe He arose from the dead. Please tell God the following –

**Heavenly Father, I am a sinner and am sorry. Please forgive me for sinning. I am willing to quit displaying bad actions, having bad thoughts, and doing what I used to do that You do not like. I believe the following things: I believe Jesus was nailed to the cross, You took all my sins (past, present, and future) and placed them on Jesus, Jesus became guilty for every sin, You punished Him for every sin, after He was punished, shed His blood, and died - I believe my sins were erased! I trust Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase my sins and let me into heaven. I believe He arose from the dead. I confess Jesus as the Lord of my life. In Jesus' Name, Amen.**

After you have accepted Jesus as your Savior, you need to tell someone about it (Matthew 12:8-9). Besides, they might want to become a Christian too. Tell a good Christian church that you became a Christian, and tell them you want to be baptized and publically let people know that you identify with Christ.

Also, the long outline you just read will be very helpful in teaching you how to live the Christian lifestyle each day, so please become familiar with it.

Weeks, months, and years after you have trusted Jesus' shed blood to erase your sins and believed He arose from the dead, you should "Examine yourselves, whether ye be in the faith; prove your own selves. Know ye not your own selves, how that Jesus Christ is in you, except ye be reprobates **(not really saved)**?" (2 Corinthians 13:5). In addition to having confidence that your sins are forgiven, if you try to and are increasingly able to live the way the previous paragraphs explained, you will have examined yourself, and you will have passed the test! Many, very important Bible verses will apply to you if you are living this way. Knowing you are going to heaven is the most comforting thought someone can have. Many believe they are Christians but really aren't. Their lifestyles don't align with verses in the Bible that prove someone is a Christian. When the Bible says, "Examine yourselves, whether ye be in the faith;" and "Ye shall know them by their fruits.", it isn't asking us if we have said a prayer to believe in Jesus. We receive evidence we are saved because we have major changes in the way we think and live. Yes, there are people who basically claim that if you say a prayer one time to get saved, you shouldn't doubt your salvation, even if there is little or no change in the way you live throughout your life. How could they tell others that and ignore 2 Corinthians 5:17? The following is a list of important Bible verses you will have accomplished, so look these verses up:

1 John 2:3-11; Matthew 7:12-27; Hebrews 10:26-29; Luke 14:16-35; Colossians 3:1-25; Colossians 4:1-2,5-6; Ephesians 5:15-17; Ephesians 4:30; 1 John 4:13; Matthew 6:12-15; John 14:15,23-24; James 1:12; 2 Corinthians 5:14-17; Revelation 3:15-16,19-21; Revelation 3:21; John 15:1-6; Luke 13:3; Luke 6:46-48; Acts 10:36; Romans 10:9-10; Luke 9:23-26; Galatians 2:20; Romans 14:7-9; 1 Corinthians 15:31; Philippians 2:12-13; James 2:14-26; Deuteronomy 6:4-7; Matthew 10:28; Isaiah 26:3; 1 Timothy 5:6; Matthew 24:13; Romans 8:6; Romans 12:1; Luke 17:26-33; 2 Corinthians 7:9,10; Luke 16:16; Matthew 6:33; 1 Timothy 6:12; Hebrews 13:5; Titus 1:16; Romans 2:6-10; 2 Thessalonians 1:7-9; Matthew 3:8; Revelation 21:7

## Chapter 10

### HOW TO KNOW YOU ARE REALLY SAVED

If you claim to be a Christian, and you were told in a different chapter of this book to follow this chapter because you aren't living the way a Bible verse or verses say you should live, you do not need to follow this entire chapter for every Bible verse you are not obeying. For example, if you see a Christian who is in need but decide not to help them, even though you have the goods they need (1 John 3:17), you would just need to follow the third paragraph of this chapter.

Another important point is that if you are not sure you are really a Christian (Hebrews 11:6, Matthew 21:18-22, 1 John 5:14, and Hebrews 11:1), you should follow chapter 41 of this book. Also, Mark 16:17-18 confuses some people. This applied to apostles in the New Testament, in that if they were accidentally bitten or accidentally ingested poison, they wouldn't be harmed. These were signs that proved Jesus' disciples were Christians, and it allowed people who heard their gospel messages to trust that what they said was true (Mark 16:20). People misunderstand these verses and do things such as handle venomous snakes and drink poison to see if it will kill them, and if they get bitten or drink poison and don't die, they will know they are really Christians. Someone who does this is tempting God. Luke 14:9-12 gives an example of this. If you have been tempting God in such ways, ask God to forgive you for that. Also, not every Christian has every one of these gifts, but the eleven apostles in these verses seemingly did. First Corinthians 12:4-11 reveals, "Now there are diversities of gifts, but the same Spirit. And there are differences of administrations, but the same Lord. And there are diversities of operations, but it is the same God which worketh all in all. But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man to profit withal. For to one is given by the Spirit the word of wisdom; to another the word of knowledge by the same Spirit; To another faith by the same Spirit; to another the gifts of healing by the same Spirit; To another the working of miracles; to another prophecy; to another discerning of spirits; to another *divers* kinds of tongues; to another the interpretation of tongues: But all these worketh that one and the selfsame Spirit, dividing to every man severally as he will.")

You will very likely not live the way certain Bible verses say a Christian should live, and a Christian can and will very likely do this repeatedly, but that Christian will feel really bad about

it and will want God to forgive them and try their best, with His help, not to do it again (Hebrews 12:5–11). If they (or you) fail in the same way in the future, they (or you) should ask God to forgive them (or you) again and try their (or your) best, with His help, not to do it again (Hebrews 12:5–11). But if they (or you) continually fail to live the way certain Bible verses say a Christian should live, they (or you) are not bothered and upset because of it, and they (or you) are not willing to change their (or your) sinful ways, they (or you) need to pray or make a decision again to become a Christian. (If this describes you, please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

The theme of 1 John is letting people who have prayed or made decisions to become Christians know if they have really become Christians. Some verses, and more particularly, their meanings are repeated throughout 1 John:

1 John 1:6 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they continue to sin the way they used to (For examples of what to avoid saying, thinking, doing, and desiring, see chapters 18 and 35 of this book.), something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 1:8 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they believe they have never sinned, they aren't really a Christian.

1 John 2:3-4 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they don't obey Jesus' commandments in the Bible, something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 2:6 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they don't live like Jesus lived (For an example of this, see chapter 39 of this book.), something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 2:7-8 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they don't say or do what the Holy Spirit urges them to do, or they don't help someone they come across who has a physical, mental, or Spiritual need, and instead they take care of their needs, something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 2:9 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they hate someone (greatly disliking, boldly challenging, disagreeing with someone over and over in their

thoughts, or wishing something terrible will happen to them), especially another Christian, something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 2:10 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they show hatred towards someone, another person can witness that and become confused about Christianity (caused to stumble). **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 2:13 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they haven't become a stronger Christian over the years (live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book), something is wrong.

1 John 2:14 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they haven't become a stronger Christian over the years (live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book), and they aren't able to think about and obey what the Bible says to do or not to do when they are tempted to sin, something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 2:16 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they want to or actually spend their time doing things that don't involve God (not living a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book), they crave everything they see, and/or they think their achievements and/or possessions are better than others, something is wrong. Instead of these things, Christians do God's will (live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book). **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 2:19 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they quit living the Christian lifestyle (For an example of the Christian lifestyle, see chapter 39 of this book.) and never returned or had a change of heart, they wasn't a Christian in the first place.

1 John 2:20 - A Christian doesn't quit living the Christian lifestyle and never returns or has a change of heart. It's impossible for that to happen, because the Holy Spirit lives inside them.

1 John 2:21-22 - If someone says that Jesus is not the Christ and/or denies that Jesus is God's Son and Christ isn't the way to heaven, obviously isn't a Christian.

1 John 2:23 A Christian will believe that Jesus is God's Son and the Way to heaven.

1 John 2:24-25 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they no longer believe that Jesus is God's Son and the Savior, something is wrong. They either need to come to their senses and ask God to forgive them for that, or they need to pray or make a decision to become a Christian again. Also, a Christian should enjoy that they are going to spend eternity in heaven. If they have lost this joy, they should ask God to forgive them for that and realize how truly exciting it will be.

1 John 2:26-27 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they have drifted from Christian beliefs and from living the Christian lifestyle (For an example of the Christian lifestyle, see chapter 39 of this book.) because someone convinced them to do so, something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 2:28 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they aren't in fellowship with Christ (living a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book.), something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 2:29 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they don't live a righteous lifestyle (a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book.), something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 3:2-3 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they don't continue to live a pure lifestyle (live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book.), something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 3:6 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they continue to sin on purpose (For examples of sins see chapter 35 of this book.) and live a lifestyle that is opposite to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book, something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 3:7 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they don't do what is right (live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book), something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 3:9 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they continue to sin on purpose, (for examples of sins see chapter 35 of this book), something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 3:10 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they don't live righteously (live a lifestyle that is opposite to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book) and don't love other Christians (For information on love according to the Bible, see chapter 14 of this book.), something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 3:11-12 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they hate someone because they do righteous things, something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 3:14-15 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they hate other Christians, or generally anyone (For information on love according to the Bible, see chapter 14 of this book.), something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 3:16 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they don't love Christians, or generally anyone, the way Jesus loved us (See the first paragraph of chapter 14 of this book.), something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 3:17 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they don't give money or other means to someone they come across who really needs it, even though they can afford to do so, something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.** Although, if it is an expensive need, you should ask the church you have supported financially to help with the costs. The Apostle Paul took up collections from churches for expensive needs.

1 John 3:18 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they don't literally do things to help people who have needs they come across, something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 3:24 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they don't obey God's commandments (A Christian should be able to stop sinning more and more over time, because the Holy Spirit lives in them. However, some Christians pass away before their time due to not being successful against certain sins. This is known as the sin unto death (1 John 5:16-17), something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 4:5 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they are tricked by people who say that Jesus didn't come to earth with a real body and other lies such as those, something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 4:9-12 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they don't love others (See chapter 14 of this book.), something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 4:13 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they don't have proof that the Holy Spirit lives inside them (See chapter 12 of this book.), something is wrong.

1 John 4:14-15 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, they should know that Jesus is God's Son.

1 John 4:16 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, they should understand that God loves them deeply, and as a result, they should tell Him that they believe He loves them that much, and they believe this because He sent Jesus as a sacrifice to take away their sins.

1 John 4:17 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, their love for God in the way verse 16 explained should grow over time. They also should live the way Jesus lived more and more over time (live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book). As a result, and as this verse teaches, they aren't afraid to meet God on the day of judgement. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 4:18 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, and they love God the way verses 16 and 17 have explained, they do not fear they will go to hell. As this verse, Hebrews 11:6, Matthew 21:18-22, 1 John 5:14, and Hebrews 11:1 suggests, a Christian will know

for sure that they are going to heave. However, it's possible for a Christian to doubt their salvation at times.

1 John 5:2 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they don't love God (which means they don't love people), something is wrong. (In short, they don't live the way chapter 14 of this book explains.) **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 5:3 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they don't keep and enjoy keeping God's commandments (living the way the Bible says to live), something is wrong. It's possible, though, for a Christian to feel burdened in keeping God's commandments at times.

1 John 5:16-17 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, they should pray for Christians they see or hear sinning. They should ask God to help them stop committing the sin. Although, sometimes it won't help for a Christian to pray for another Christian in that manner, because they could struggle to stop committing a certain sin and God ends their life early as a result. Since the Christian is losing their battle against that sin or other sins, it makes Christianity look bad. So, in order to stop this cycle God ends their life early. The Christian still goes to heaven, though, because Christians don't lose their salvation. Jude 1:24 explains this, "Now unto him that is able to keep you from falling, and to present *you* faultless before the presence of his glory with exceeding joy,"

1 John 5:18 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they sin on purpose (See chapter 35 of this book for examples of sins.), something is wrong. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

1 John 5:22 - If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but they spend their time, thoughts, money, conversations, and efforts on things that don't involve the things of God (These are known as idols.), something is wrong. They don't live a similar lifestyle as the one explained in chapter 39 of this book. **If this describes you, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.**

Second Corinthians 5:17 says, "Therefore if any man *be* in Christ, *he is* a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new." Colossians 3:1-4 also says, "If ye then

be risen with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God. Set your affection on things above, not on things on the earth. For ye are dead, and your life is hid with Christ in God. When Christ, *who is* our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory." **This is assurance of salvation**; Jesus completely takes over every area of your life and every moment of each day. This kind of lifestyle is explained in chapter 39 of this book, and you'll see that anyone can live this way and isn't impossible.

Although, Revelation 3:15-16 says, "I know thy works, that thou art neither cold nor hot: I would thou wert cold or hot. So then because thou art lukewarm (not trying your best to live the Christian lifestyle), and neither cold nor hot, I will spue thee out of my mouth." In Revelation 3:17-18 Jesus also reveals that those He was addressing were also proud and thought they didn't need correction. Then, in Revelation 3:19 Jesus proclaims, "As many as I love, I rebuke and chasten: be zealous therefore, and repent." This verse "seems" to mean if you are bothered and upset because you are lukewarm, that means Jesus is disciplining you, you belong to Him and are saved, and you just need to be zealous and repent because you are lukewarm. However, it doesn't always necessarily end there, and a lot of people do not understand what the word 'zealous' means.

If you have prayed or made a decision to become Christian, and if you read this and realize that you haven't been living the Christian lifestyle the best you can, you are probably upset (Revelation 3:19). Since you're upset, you may believe this is proof that Jesus is disciplining you because you belong to Him (are going to heaven), in the same way a father disciplines his son (explained in Hebrews 12:5–11). So, you may say, "All I have to do is repent by asking God to forgive me for being lukewarm (not trying your best to live the Christian lifestyle), and I'm good to go." **The big question is, "Did you really repent when you asked God to forgive you; was you 'zealous'?"** (Although you may not have the opportunity for all the following things, the following paragraphs give a visual/practical example of what it means to be willing to repent and do so in a zealous manner. A simple summary of how you need to be willing to live "from this moment on and for the rest of your life" is - when you don't feel that the Lord is wanting you to witness to and/or do other things to help others, you try to spend the rest of your time thinking about the things of God. You will see this pattern beginning with the next paragraph. Jesus also teaches us to count the cost (Luke 14:25–35), so the following outline

**also helps in doing this.)** Everyone isn't gifted in the same ways (For example, every Christian isn't a Bible teacher.), but the following outline basically covers every area of someone's life, broken down into separate paragraphs. The purpose of this outline isn't necessarily to make a promise to God, but it should give you better understanding. The way you can know if you really repented is for you to tell God the following things:

"I will from this moment on (because I'm thankful for Jesus dying on the cross to erase my sins and for all the things that are waiting for me in heaven, and I love Him more than anything or anyone (Psalm 139:23-24)), try very hard (Luke 13:22-24) to do things such as (while not doing them out of unwanted duty, explained in chapter 40 of this book) -

spend more of my money on things like evangelistic associations, charities, and things for God's purposes instead of entertainment (Technology items can be used and enjoyed for God's purposes, and parts of movies, for example, can be enjoyed in order to glorify God.) and material things in order to show off and/or don't involve God (Matthew 6:19-21), if I have money left over from providing myself with food, clothing, and shelter, I'm willing to give to those who have needs (Luke 12:16-21) (Or, if it is an expensive need where a collection could be taken up, I want to ask the church that I attend or have supported financially to help meet their needs.), give offerings to my church every week (1 Corinthians 16:2);

teach the Bible (Matthew 28:19), counsel people who are having problems (Galatians 6:2), encourage others (Hebrews 10:25), correct believers when they sin (Galatians 6:1), and tell people how to become Christians (2 Timothy 4:5) by mouth, through email or social media, and/or by handing out or dropping off tracts that tell people how to become Christians in places like stores or restaurants where people can pick them up;

feed, clothe, and find shelter for the less fortunate, and visit people in hospitals and jails (Matthew 25:35-36; Mark 12:30-31; Titus 3:14);

do acts of kindness for others that will cause them to think good about You (for example, do the following for people - cook, clean, yard work, shop, wash cars, fix appliances) (Matthew 5:16; Titus 3:14);

**and when I don't feel that You are wanting me to do those type of things, I will try to do things such as -**

read through the Bible and do what it says to do and don't do what it says not to do (James 1:22);

think about what I've read (Psalm 119:15);

think about things such as a miracle I witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness I saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because You gifted them with that ability, or imagine what will be going on in heaven when I get there, etc. (Philippians 4:8);

pray how Jesus taught in Matthew 6:9-13 by (**admiring You, asking You to forgive me when I sin and try not to do it again** (especially every harsh or idle word I say which reveals the state of my heart (Matthew 12:33-37), and I can do wonderful things for You, but if I'm repeatedly, without remorse, and purposefully not patient (giving up living the Christian lifestyle when people and things are difficult, getting back at people who did wrong to me, and getting upset or flustered

when I'm waiting on someone, for example), kind (helping those who have physical, mental, emotional, financial, or spiritual needs I come across), if I envy, brag, or I'm proud of my mind, body, accomplishments, and/or my possessions; think that I'm better and more important than others, rude, insist on my own way, irritable and/or resentful, rejoice at wrongdoing, dwell over/keep count of people's sins against me and hold grudges, have improper or dishonorable behavior, blame people for having evil desires or intentions behind what they do, don't think the best of people, don't try to cover people's faults (This doesn't apply to criminal activity.) and instead expose the wrong they did in order to make them look bad in front of others (The three previous descriptions that are underlined do not apply to possible false teachers – explained in much of chapter 5 of this book.), and don't continue to forgive people who sin against me and expect that You will work everything out right, the good things about me don't count (1 Corinthians 13:1–6). I will also try to rejoice about the good things of someone and won't believe they did wrong, but I will try to only believe they did wrong if there is impossible to deny evidence. (1 Corinthians 13:7)); **thank You for blessings and difficult circumstances (1 Thessalonians 5:18), and ask You to help me and others);**

talk about You and the Bible with people who will listen (Deuteronomy 6:7), say things that can help and encourage others and isn't perverted, hateful, foul, threatening, argumentative, prideful, rude, trying to make fun of others, etc. (Ephesians 4:29), talk about a miracle I witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness I saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because You gifted them with that ability, how beautiful the weather and scenery is because You made it that way, or what will be going on in heaven when we get there, etc. (Philippians 4:8);

attend church services I am able to attend in order to worship, fellowship, and learn (Hebrews 10:25);

try to do whatever the Holy Spirit gives me thoughts to say and do each day no matter how challenging they may be or who or what tries to stop me (James 4:17);

try not to commit sinful actions and thoughts (Luke 13:3), such as lusting (For example, wanting (coveting) another man's wife should be avoided (Matthew 5:27-30), and it also becomes sinful when you plan how and when you will do any form of a sexual act (Ephesians 5:3) with someone you aren't married to (This is evil desire (Colossians 3:5) and impure thoughts (Philippians 4:8).) and carry those acts out (James 1:14-15). When you do these sexual acts, you give in to impurity (1 Thessalonians 4:7; Colossians 3:5) and aren't able to control your body in sanctification and honor (1 Thessalonians 4:3-5). If you aren't able to stop doing sexual acts, you should become married (1 Corinthians 7:9).), getting drunk (1 Corinthians 6:10), practicing homosexuality (Romans 1:26-28), thinking bad thoughts about others (1 Corinthians 13:1-7), talking bad about others (Romans 1:29), lying, and stealing), and avoid saying, thinking, and doing things I feel might be sinful (Isaiah 30:21; Romans 14:23);

**I'm willing to let Jesus become the Lord of my life (2 Corinthians 4:3-5; Romans 10:9; Acts 2:36) by taking over every "area" of my life from this moment on** - (the way I handle my money, the way I spend my time each day, thoughts, conversations with people who will listen (Deuteronomy 6:7 and see chapter 42 of this book for helpful information), what I watch and listen to (explained in chapter 23 of this book), where I go, try not to avoid witnessing to or helping others because I'm afraid of getting killed or robbed (Matthew 10:28), plans of each day, and future goals).

**I'm willing to let Jesus become the Lord of my life (2 Corinthians 4:3-5; Romans 10:9; Acts 2:36) by taking over every "moment" of my life from this moment on** - Whatever I do (eat, drink, get ready for work or school, drive, shop, play golf, watch a sporting event, or mow the lawn, etc.), I want to try to do it to please You and try to think about things such as what I've read

in the Bible (Psalm 119:15); pray (Matthew 6:9-13); think about things such as a miracle I witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness I saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because You gifted them with that ability, or imagine what will be going on in heaven when I get there, etc. (Philippians 4:8) while I eat, drink, get ready for work or school, drive, shop, play golf, watch a sporting event, or mow the lawn, etc. (1 Corinthians 10:31).

I want to think, say, watch, listen to, go where, and do what Jesus wants me to do each day (Mark 8:34).

I "will" try to do these things no matter who or what circumstances try to stop me (Luke 13:24, Luke 9:62).

I want to try to obey Colossians 3:17 by before I say or do something to help someone, I want to tell You that I am doing it for the Lord Jesus, and I thank You for the opportunity. I don't only want to take care of people's needs by witnessing to and/or doing other things to help them, but the reason I want to do these things is so they will think good about You (Matthew 5:16)."

Also, the long outline you just read will be very helpful in teaching you how to live the Christian lifestyle each day, so please become familiar with it.

Weeks, months, and years after you have told God that you will try to live that way (repented), you should do what 2 Corinthians 13:5 says, "Examine yourselves, whether ye be in the faith; prove your own selves. Know ye not your own selves, how that Jesus Christ is in you, except ye be reprobates **(not really a Christian)**?" In addition to having confidence that your sins are forgiven, if you try to and are increasingly able to live that way, you will know that you truly repented.

Although, you might believe you are a Christian because you are bothered that you are lukewarm (not trying your best to live the type of lifestyle that was explained in the long list), but if you never truly repent (try very hard "from that moment on" to follow Jesus – An example of this is explained in the long outline of this chapter.) and are able to live that way more and more over time (You should be able to do this if you are really a Christian - (2 Corinthians 3:18).), Jesus will spew you out of His mouth. Hebrews 12:5–11 and Revelation 3:15-16,19 seem to contradict themselves with 2 Corinthians 5:17 and Colossians 3:1-4. Second Corinthians 5:17 and Colossians 3:1-4 seem to mean if you aren't a completely new person over time after you pray or make a decision to become a Christian, you aren't really a Christian. But, Hebrews 12:5–11 and Revelation 3:15-16,19 seem to mean if you are bothered and upset because you aren't a completely new person, that is evidence you are a Christian, and you just need to repent and try to do better. However, you can tell God that you will try to do better, but weeks, months, and years after you have supposedly repented, you should be well on your way to becoming a completely new person (2 Corinthians 5:17 and Colossians 3:1-4). Even people in prison are ashamed of themselves for not living the way they should. Also keep in mind, Hebrews 10:26-27 says, "For if we sin wilfully after that we have received the knowledge of the truth, there remaineth no more sacrifice for sins, But a certain fearful looking for of judgment and fiery indignation, which shall devour the adversaries." You shouldn't think that you can slack off from living the Christian lifestyle every once in a while and start back; it doesn't work that way.

**It's very possible, though, to be a Christian but struggle to become a completely new person in all areas of life. Probably the best way you can know if you became a Christian after you had faith in Jesus is if you have strong desires to learn about the Bible (1 Peter 2:2), have strong desires to follow Jesus (1 Peter 4:2, Colossians 2:11), and try your best, with God's help, to follow Jesus (see the long list in this chapter) and to follow 2 Corinthians 5:15 and Colossians 3:1-4 by trying to become a completely new person (your thoughts, conversations (see chapter 42 of this book for helpful information), what you watch and listen to (explained in chapter 23 of this book), where you go, what you spend your time doing each day, the way you handle your money (explained in chapter 19 of this book), physical safety (Matthew 10:28), and future goals), and you become saddened when you fail to live this way (2 Corinthians 7:9-10) and become motivated to not fail the Lord again (Hebrews 12:5–11; Revelation 3:15-16,19) because you love Him more than anything or anyone (Psalm 139:23-**

**24; 1 John 5:3). Also, see chapter 12 of this book and the last five indented paragraphs of chapter 13.**

**On the other hand, if you have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but your heart desires are opposite and/or there has been no change in the following things - you enjoy seeing and hearing the same sinful things or feel like sinning the way you did before you prayed or made a decision to become a Christian (For example, you still want to get drunk, chase women in order to have sex, show off your appearance or material things in order to impress others (Romans 6:1-11).), you aren't able to have assurance that you are really a Christian. Please follow chapter 41 of this book.**

A similar and very important topic that involves the heart is - If you have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but these things - (your job, home, family, friends, appearance, personal safety (Matthew 10:28), collecting finances, buying material things in order to show off, spending your time enjoying watching and/or listening to things that don't involve God (explained in chapter 23 of this book), and/or being entertained by things that don't involve God - getting drunk, doing drugs (1 Corinthians 6:19-20; 1 Thessalonians 5:6-8; 1 Peter 5:8), lusting (For example, wanting (coveting) another man's wife should be avoided (Matthew 5:27-30), and it also becomes sinful when you plan how and when you will do any form of a sexual act (Ephesians 5:3) with someone you aren't married to (This is evil desire (Colossians 3:5) and impure thoughts (Philippians 4:8).) and carry those acts out (James 1:14-15). When you do these sexual acts, you give in to impurity (1 Thessalonians 4:7; Colossians 3:5) and aren't able to control your body in sanctification and honor (1 Thessalonians 4:3-5). If you aren't able to stop doing sexual acts, you should become married (1 Corinthians 7:9).) are more important to you and/or you enjoy them more than doing the kind of things explained in the long list of this chapter, and when you aren't doing these kind of things, thinking about the things of God (Psalm 139:23-24; 1 John 5:3), please ask God to forgive you for that, and try your best to change with God's help.

**Another way to apply this is:**

**1. What do you enjoy doing the most each day? Is it doing the kind of things listed in chapter 39 of this book, or is it something else?**

**2. Who do you enjoy spending your time with the most each day? Is it the Lord or someone else? (Although, you can spend all your time with someone and live the Christian lifestyle together.)**

**3. What do you spend more of your time, other than work or school, etc., doing each day? Is it doing the kind of things listed in chapter 39 of this book, or is it something else?**

**4. What or who do you spend more of your time, other than work or school, etc., thinking about each day? Is it the kind of things listed in chapter 39 of this book, or is it something or someone (Admiring and thinking about someone you live the Christian lifestyle alongside shouldn't be a problem. These thoughts should be centered on God and how you and the person shared innocent laughs together (Proverbs 17:22), for example.) else?**

If your answer to question # 1 is - something else, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.

If your answer to question # 2 is - someone else, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.

If your answer to question # 3 is - something else, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.

If your answer to question # 4 is - something or someone else, please follow the third paragraph of this chapter.

Other ways you can have assurance that you are really a Christian after professing faith in Him is explained in the following paragraphs:

Romans 6:1-23 says, “1What shall we say then? Shall we continue in sin, that grace may abound? 2God forbid. How shall we, that are dead to sin, live any longer therein? 3Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death? 4Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life. **(When Christians are baptized, it symbolizes their sinful lifestyle being buried, and when they are raised out of the water, it represents that they are a new person and will live their new lifestyle by following Jesus. (For an example of how to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.) Just like Jesus**

was raised from the dead by the glorious power of God, Christians are given new life, and the power of the Holy Spirit gives them the ability to live the Christian lifestyle. For an example of the Christian lifestyle, see chapter 39 of this book.) <sup>5</sup>For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also *in the likeness of his* resurrection: (If we have died to our sins (become Christians), we will follow Jesus afterwards (Chapter 39 of this book gives examples of what this involves.) and be raised to heaven when we leave this world. For an explanation of how someone can become a Christian, see chapter 41 of this book.)

<sup>6</sup>Knowing this, that our old man is crucified *with* him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin. (When someone is a Christian, their old, sinful lifestyle should continue to die more and more overtime. When the Holy Spirit (The Holy Spirit is the third person of the Trinity. One of His purposes is to help Christians live the Christian lifestyle.) comes to live inside a person as soon as they become a Christian (Galatians 3:2), sin doesn't seem as attractive and desirable. For example, when a drug addict or alcoholic becomes a Christian, their desires to do drugs or get drunk isn't as strong. This also applies to Christians who used to gossip, have sex before marriage, brag, try to irritate others, etc. A Christian doesn't love to sin, love it when they sin, have the same desires to sin the way they did before they prayed or made a decision to become a Christian (Colossians 2:11), and they don't enjoy seeing and hearing sinful things. A Christian will very likely fail in these ways, but they will be bothered and want to avoid failing in these ways again (Hebrews 12:5–11). Christians don't continue to say, think, do, and/or desire things that God hates on purpose without it bothering them. (For explanations of numerous sins, see chapters 18 and 35 of this book.) Before someone becomes a Christian, they don't have the Holy Spirit living inside them. As a result, they don't have the ability to stop continually sinning on purpose. This is known as serving sin.) <sup>7</sup>For he that is dead is freed from sin. (Since a Christian's desires to sin aren't as strong as they used to be (Colossians 2:11), sin doesn't seem as appealing.)

<sup>8</sup>Now if we be dead with Christ, we believe that we shall also live with him: (If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, and they have died to their sins (lived the way Romans 6:1-7 explains), they will have a way to have assurance of their salvation.) <sup>9</sup>Knowing that Christ being raised from the dead dieth no more; death hath no more dominion over him. <sup>10</sup>For in that he died, he died unto sin once: but in that he liveth, he liveth

unto God. 11Likewise reckon ye also yourselves to be dead indeed unto sin, but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our Lord. **(A Christian should continue to live the way Romans 6:1-7 teaches throughout their life.)**

12Let not sin therefore reign in your mortal body, that ye should obey it in the lusts thereof. 13Neither yield ye your members *as* instruments of unrighteousness unto sin: but yield yourselves unto God, as those that are alive from the dead, and your members *as* instruments of righteousness unto God. **(Instead of living a sinful lifestyle, a Christian should live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book.)** 14For sin shall not have dominion over you: for ye are not under the law, but under grace. **(Keeping the Old Testament law doesn't grant someone salvation, and it doesn't give them the ability to live the way Romans 6:1-7 explains. However, if someone is saved by grace (a free gift of salvation from God), the Holy Spirit comes to live inside them (Galatians 3:2) and gives them the ability to live the way Romans 6:1-7 describes.)**

15What then? shall we sin, because we are not under the law, but under grace? God forbid. 16Know ye not, that to whom ye yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants ye are to whom ye obey; whether of sin unto death, or of obedience unto righteousness? **(If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian but lives a sinful lifestyle (which is opposite from the type of lifestyle explained in chapter 39 of this book) and doesn't want to or try to stop (doesn't want to repent), they will not go to heaven (Revelation 3:2-5).)** 17But God be thanked, that ye were the servants of sin, but ye have obeyed from the heart that form of doctrine which was delivered you. 18Being then made free from sin, ye became the servants of righteousness. **(Since a Christian lives the way Romans 6:1-7 describes more and more over time (2 Corinthians 3:18), they are able to be servants of righteousness (live the way chapter 39 of this book explains).)** 19I speak after the manner of men because of the infirmity of your flesh: for as ye have yielded your members servants to uncleanness and to iniquity unto iniquity; even so now yield your members servants to righteousness unto holiness. **(Before someone becomes a Christian, they love to live a sinful lifestyle and can't escape it. After they become a Christian, they have the ability to live a holy lifestyle more and more over time (2 Corinthians 3:18). (An example of this lifestyle is explained in chapter 39 of this book.), and they should love living that way**

**as much as they loved to sin in their past. See chapter 40 of this book for more information on this.)**

20For when ye were the servants of sin, ye were free from righteousness. 21What fruit had ye then in those things whereof ye are now ashamed? for the end of those things *is* death. 22But now being made free from sin, and become servants to God, ye have your fruit unto holiness, and the end everlasting life. **(If a Christian lives the way Romans 6:1-7 describes, they live a holy lifestyle. (See chapter 39 of this book for an example of this lifestyle.) If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, and they try to and are able to live a holy lifestyle as a result, they will have one way of knowing they are really a Christian (Hebrews 12:14).)** 23For the wages of sin *is* death; but the gift of God *is* eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.

It's impossible to leave out another important topic: If someone has trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase their sins and let them into heaven, but they later hit a cross-roads and no longer trust that to get them into heaven, they're not in a good position (Colossians 1:21-23; Hebrews 3:6). They need to pray or make a decision to become a Christian again.

Before this chapter ends, many professing Christians don't face extreme tests like the church in Smyrna in Revelation 2:10-11 faced, but if someone who has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian is able to not denounce Jesus and the Christian lifestyle while facing tortuous situations, they can gain assurance of their salvation.

**In conclusion, please follow the following four paragraphs -**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc.), but you are not a completely different person (your thoughts, conversations (see chapter 42 of this book for helpful information), what you watch and listen to (explained in chapter 23 of this book), where you go, what you spend your time doing each day, the way you handle your money (explained in chapter 19 of this book), physical safety (Matthew 10:28), and future goals) and are bothered because of this and want to put Jesus first in every area of your life from this moment on, please repent. (Follow the outline in this chapter, beginning at the 5<sup>th</sup> indented paragraph with the words, "Second Corinthians 5:17 says...")

If in the future you haven't tried your absolute best to live this way, ask God to forgive you for that. After that, "from that moment on" try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) to begin living this way again, with God helping you change. (Continue to follow this pattern every time you fail to live this way.)

If you have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but you're not sure you will go to heaven (Hebrews 11:6; Matthew 21:18-22; 1 John 5:14; and Hebrews 11:1), please follow chapter 41 of this book.

If you have never prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, you have just counted the cost (Luke 14:25-35) after reading this chapter (realized what type of lifestyle you will have to live after you pray or make a decision to become a Christian). If you're willing to begin living this way after you accept Christ as your Savior (strive to enter in at the straight gate (Luke 13:22-24)), tell God that you trust Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believe He arose from the dead.

## Chapter 11

### THE LIFESTYLE OF A CHRISTIAN

Romans 8:1 says, "*There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus (going to heaven), who walk not after the flesh (They spend their time saying, thinking, and doing what they want to say, think, and do, and those things do not involve Jesus.) but after the Spirit. (They spend their time saying, thinking, and doing what Jesus wants them to say, think, and do. For an example of what this lifestyle looks like, see chapter 39 of this book.)"*

**If someone is a Christian, they live the exact opposite from people who aren't Christians more and more over time (2 Corinthians 3:18).**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you haven't been living this way, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

In 2 Corinthians 5:17 we read, "Therefore if any man *be* in Christ, *he is* a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new."

**If you're a Christian, every area of your life is going to be different from what it used to be more and more over time (2 Corinthians 3:18), and every area of your life is going to involve God. Your thoughts, conversations with people who will listen (Deuteronomy 6:7 and see chapter 42 of this book for helpful information), what you watch and listen to (explained in chapter 23 of this book), the way you spend your time each day, where you go, future goals, physical safety (Matthew 10:28), and the way you handle your money (explained in chapter 19 of this book) will all be centered on God. These things are explained in detail in chapter 39 of this book.**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you haven't been living this way, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

**Another way to apply this is:**

**1. What do you enjoy doing the most each day? Is it doing the kind of things listed in chapter 39 of this book, or is it something else?**

**2. Who do you enjoy spending your time with the most each day? Is it the Lord or someone else? (Although, you can spend all your time with someone and live the Christian lifestyle together.)**

**3. What do you spend more of your time, other than work or school, etc., doing each day? Is it doing the kind of things listed in chapter 39 of this book, or is it something else?**

**4. What or who do you spend more of your time, other than work or school, etc., thinking about each day? Is it the kind of things listed in chapter 39 of this book, or is it something or someone (Admiring and thinking about someone you live the Christian lifestyle alongside shouldn't be a problem. These thoughts should be centered on God and how you and the person shared innocent laughs together (Proverbs 17:22), for example.) else?**

If your answer to question # 1 is - something else, please follow the third paragraph of chapter 10 of this book.

If your answer to question # 2 is - someone else, please follow the third paragraph of chapter 10 of this book.

If your answer to question # 3 is - something else, please follow the third paragraph of chapter 10 of this book.

If your answer to question # 4 is - something or someone else, please follow the third paragraph of chapter 10 of this book.

(Also, if you continually sin like you did before you prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, and it doesn't bother you, please pray or make a decision to become a Christian again (Hebrews 12:5–11). Please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

Matthew 15:1-9 is a helpful section to understand:

1Then came to Jesus scribes and Pharisees, which were of Jerusalem, saying, 2Why do thy disciples transgress the tradition of the elders? for they wash not their hands when they eat bread. 3But he answered and said unto them, Why do ye also transgress the commandment of God by your tradition? 4For God commanded, saying, Honour thy father and mother: and, He that curseth father or mother, let him die the death. 5But ye say, Whosoever shall say to *his* father or *his* mother, *It is a gift*, by whatsoever thou mightest be profited by me; 6And honour not his father or his mother, *he shall be free*. Thus have ye made the commandment of God of none effect by your tradition. (The scribes and Pharisees had many rituals and traditions they performed, which made them think they were devout and holy, but their hearts didn't belong to God. In this instance, they neglected to take care of their parents who needed their financial support, and the excuse they used was that they vowed to give the money that was supposed to be used to help their parents to God instead. Jesus made the point that they were not honoring their parents when they did this.) 7*Ye hypocrites, well did Esaias prophesy of you, saying,* 8*This people draweth nigh unto me with their mouth, and honoureth me with their lips; but their heart is far from me. (You can tell someone that you have said a prayer to get saved, you can go to church, pray before you go to bed, and read your Bible, but if you don't have full fellowship with Christ, your heart is far from Him. Some verses that support this are (2 Corinthians 5:15-17; Matthew 12:30; Matthew 6:24; and Revelation 3:15-16). There's no riding the fence when it comes to living the Christian lifestyle.)* If you have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but you don't have full fellowship with Christ (live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book.), please follow chapter 10 of this book.) 9But in vain they do worship me, teaching *for* doctrines the commandments of men. (The scribes and Pharisees had their traditions, but a popular tradition that people seem to teach and believe today is that praying to believe that Jesus is your Savior, getting baptized, going to church, praying before you go to bed, and reading your Bible is all there is to the Christian lifestyle. Although, the previous referenced verses don't agree with that. Every moment of every day should involve the Lord.)

(Also, if you continually sin like you did before you prayed or made a decision to get saved, and it doesn't bother you, please pray or make a decision to get saved again (Hebrews 12:5–11). Please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

Galatians 5:24 explains, "And they that are Christ's have crucified the flesh with the affections and lusts."

**If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you spend your time doing what you want to do instead of what Jesus wants you to do (see chapter 39 of this book) – please follow chapter 10 of this book.**

(Also, if you continually sin like you did before you prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, and it doesn't bother you, please pray or make a decision to become a Christian again (Hebrews 12:5–11). Please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

Galatians 5:16 says, "*This* I say then, Walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfil the lust of the flesh."

**Instead of committing sins (For examples, see chapters 18 and 35 of this book.) and wanting to and actually spending your time entertaining yourself with things that don't involve God (the lust of the flesh), you should spend your time doing the type of things explained in chapter 39 of this book (walk in the Spirit). When you spend your time each day doing these type of things for the Lord, you will not have time to fulfil the lust of the flesh. A verse that supports this is Romans 12:2 which says, "And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what *is* that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God." You should stay away from worldly things, spend time studying the Bible, and think about what you have studied. Whenever you're in a situation and don't know what to do or not to do, try to remember what you learned, and do it or don't do it.**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you haven't been living this way, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

In 1 Timothy 5:6 we read, "But she that liveth in pleasure is dead while she liveth."

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you spend time pleasing yourself in ways that do not involve God instead of spending your time doing the type of things explained in chapter 39 of this book, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

First John 2:6 explains, "He that saith he abideth **(This word means to remain or stay with. In this case, a Christian continues to follow Jesus (imitate and obey/walk even as he walked) for the rest of their life. Someone who believes they can go to heaven because they believe in Jesus, but they know they aren't going to follow Jesus for the rest of their life (abide in Him), needs to know that it doesn't work that way (Matthew 10:38).** in him ought himself also so to walk, even as he walked."

**Jesus' life was all about serving others whenever God gave Him the thought to do that, and when He wasn't doing that, He was thinking about the things of His Father. If you are saved, you should try to follow Jesus' example (walk, even as he walked). Chapter 39 of this book gives an example of what this lifestyle looks like. Over time, you should also display Jesus's character traits listed in Galatians 5:22–23 and 2 Peter 1:3–11 (explained in chapter 21 of this book), and avoid displaying sinful actions, thoughts, and comments. For more information on abiding in Jesus, see the 2nd to last indented paragraph of chapter 16 of this book, beginning with the words, "Jesus said in John 15:4–6..."**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you haven't been living this way, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

In Matthew 7:15–20 Jesus warned, "Beware of false prophets, which come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves. Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles? Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit. A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither *can* a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit. Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire. Wherefore by their fruits ye shall know them."

**The following is a list of fruits that describe a true Christian—becoming more holy in the way they live (They live a set-apart lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book.) (Romans 6:22), sharing their material possessions (Romans 15:28), telling people how to become Christians (Romans 1:16), having Jesus' character traits (Galatians 5:22–23) (explained in chapter 21 of this book), praising the Lord (Hebrews 13:15), answered prayer (1 John 5:14–15), and doing good works (Colossians 1:10).**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you haven't been displaying these fruits, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

Second Timothy 4:8 says, "Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing."

**Similar verses are 1 John 3:1–3**, "Behold, what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God: therefore the world knoweth us not, because it knew him not. Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is. And every man that hath this hope in him purifieth himself (If you have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, and you try really hard to become perfect now, you will know that you will be perfect like Jesus when you get to heaven.), even as he is pure." Christians look forward to Christ's return so much that they expect Him to return at

**any time, and they try to be effective in following Him (living a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book) so others will be saved before it is too late.**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you haven't been living this way, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

First Peter 2:2–3 proclaims, "As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word, that ye may grow thereby: If so be ye have tasted that the Lord *is* gracious."

**If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you do not have a great desire to study the Bible and learn how to follow Jesus (For an example of to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.), that isn't a good sign. I guess it's possible for someone to be a Christian and be bothered because they don't have these desires and now do (Hebrews 12:5–11).**

James 1:22–25 explains, "But be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves. For if any be a hearer of the word, and not a doer, he is like unto a man beholding his natural face in a glass: For he beholdeth himself, and goeth his way, and straightway forgetteth what manner of man he was. But whoso looketh into the perfect law of liberty, and continueth *therein*, he being not a forgetful hearer, but a doer of the work, this man shall be blessed in his deed."

**You can "know" everything there is to know in the Bible, but if you don't literally and physically "do" what the Word says, all that knowledge is a waste. Similar verses are 1 John 3:18–19, "My little children, let us not love in word, neither in tongue; but in deed and in truth. And hereby we know that we are of the truth, and shall assure our hearts before him." If you literally "do" things to help others, instead of just saying, "I hope things will work out for you.", you show evidence of being a Christian.**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you haven't been living this way, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

First John 3:17 says, "But whoso hath this world's good, and seeth his brother have need, and shutteth up his bowels *of compassion* from him, how dwelleth the love of God in him?"

**If you profess to be a Christian and have seen another Christian in need but didn't help them, even though you had the money or goods they needed,** please follow chapter 10 of this book. Christians who have expensive needs, though, should be helped through church offerings.

In Matthew 10:26-31 Jesus stated, "Fear them not therefore: for there is nothing covered, that shall not be revealed; and hid, that shall not be known. What I tell you in darkness, *that* speak ye in light: and what ye hear in the ear, *that* preach ye upon the housetops. And fear not them which kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul: but rather fear him which is able to destroy both soul and body in hell. Are not two sparrows sold for a farthing? and one of them shall not fall on the ground without your Father. But the very hairs of your head are all numbered. Fear ye not therefore, ye are of more value than many sparrows."

**You shouldn't avoid witnessing to or helping someone whenever the Holy Spirit gives you a thought to do so because you are afraid of getting killed, hurt, or robbed.**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have been guilty of this, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

Furthermore in Matthew 6:15 it says, "But if ye forgive not men their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses."

**You need to be able to forgive people (even those who shot and killed your family members, and do good things for them (Luke 6:35). Few people would do that, but that is what Jesus**

**expects you to do). The some-what exception applies when 1 Corinthians 5:11 instructs a Christian to avoid someone who claims to be a Christian but neglects to leave their sinful ways. (see 1 Corinthians 5:11).**

If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have not forgiven someone, please follow chapter 10 of this book.

If you are unable to stop disagreeing with and being angry with someone or many people, and you have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, this is a perfect opportunity for you to please God by obeying the Bible and try to imitate the Lord Jesus Christ (your hero and the One who died so you can live in heaven for eternity) by being happy and thankful to God when your enemy or anyone else is rude and mistreats you (1 Thessalonians 5:16-18). The devil wants you to get angry and think bad thoughts about people who are rude to you, but that would be an opportunity to defeat him and glorify God. Also, you will have one way to have assurance of your salvation (Matthew 5:45), and since these people are giving you these opportunities, you can develop a major love for them and pray for them. God is using these people to make you stronger. Believe me, a big weight was lifted off my shoulders when the Lord helped me realize this! So, these are huge reasons to be glad when others mistreat you and you face trials (James 1:2-4).

Matthew 10:32–33 says, "Whosoever therefore shall confess me before men, him will I confess also before my Father which is in heaven. But whosoever shall deny me before men, him will I also deny before my Father which is in heaven." And in Mark 8:38 it says, "Whosoever therefore shall be ashamed of me and of my words in this adulterous and sinful generation; of him also shall the Son of man be ashamed, when he cometh in the glory of his Father with the holy angels."

**If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are too embarrassed to tell people that you follow Jesus, please follow chapter 10 of this book.**

James 4:17 goes on to say, "Therefore to him that knoweth to do good, and doeth *it* not, to him it is sin."

**If the Holy Spirit urges and gives you thoughts to do things such as give to a person who needs financial help or tell someone how to become a Christian, you are sinning if you don't do what He urges and gives you thoughts to do.**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have been guilty of this, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

In Psalm 78:8 it says, "And might not be as their fathers, a stubborn and rebellious generation; a generation *that* set not their heart aright, and whose spirit was not stedfast with God."

**If a Christian feels lead by the Holy Spirit to witness to or help someone, and you have held them back from doing that because you have had other plans,** (please follow chapter 10 of this book if you have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian but are guilty of this.)

Matthew 5:20 furthermore shares, "For I say unto you, That except your righteousness shall exceed *the righteousness* of the scribes and Pharisees, ye shall in no case enter into the kingdom of heaven."

**Nearly everything the scribes and Pharisees did was to show off so people would think they were excellent. They did a lot of things that people would consider good: they gave a lot of money, fasted often, prayed long drawn out prayers in public, taught in the synagogues, and did good works. Nevertheless, they did these things to get people's attention so they would praise them. Christians should do things to serve God and others in order to make Him look good and not themselves. They should tell people how to become Christians because they don't want them to go to hell, and they should do good works because they really want to help people who are having problems or are in need. Also, Christians shouldn't be proud of their accomplishments because they're simply Jesus' servants, and they're on earth to try to**

**make God look good in front of others so they will think good about God and want to become Christians too (Matthew 5:16).**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have not been living this way, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

James 1:27 says, "Pure religion and undefiled before God and the Father is this, To visit the fatherless and widows in their affliction, *and* to keep himself unspotted from the world."

**If you're saved, you're supposed to help meet the physical, mental, emotional, financial, and spiritual needs of those you come across, especially widows and children without parents. You should also try to avoid the things of this world (1 John 2:15–17), which are the lust of the flesh (wanting to or doing the following: committing the sins mentioned in chapters 18 and 35 of this book, spending your time (other than work or school, etc.), thoughts, conversations with people who will listen (Deuteronomy 6:7 and see chapter 42 of this book for helpful information), the way you handle your money (explained in chapter 19 of this book), physical safety (Matthew 10:28), what you watch and listen to (explained in chapter 23 of this book), your plans for each day, and future goals on what you want instead of what God wants), and the lust of the eyes (wanting everything you see), and the pride of life (thinking you're excellent in many ways. For example, you may think that your mind, body, possessions, accomplishments, job, country, and church are much better than others.)**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have not obeyed James 1:27, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

In Matthew 12:30 Jesus explained, "He that is not with me is against me; and he that gathereth not with me scattereth abroad."

**If you aren't currently following Jesus (Chapter 39 of this book gives an example of how to follow Jesus.), you are against Him. Therefore, if you have prayed or made a decision to**

**become a Christian, but you haven't been living a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book, please follow chapter 10 of this book.**

First Thessalonians 1:9 says, "For they themselves shew of us what manner of entering in we had unto you, and how ye turned to God from idols to serve the living and true God."

**A Christian should live a similar lifestyle to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book. If you have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but you spend your time, thoughts, and/or effort on things (idols) other than following Jesus (living a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book), please follow chapter 10 of this book.**

When someone teaches or preaches in a church and goes to great lengths to hide the verses listed in this chapter, and even tells people to ignore them, the true Christian should realize what is going on and not fall for those tricks (1 Thessalonians 5:21).

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have fallen for these type of tricks, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

## Chapter 12

### EVIDENCE THROUGH THE HOLY SPIRIT

In Romans 8:12-14 it says, "Therefore, brethren, we are debtors, not to the flesh, to live after the flesh. 13For if ye live after the flesh, ye shall die: but if ye through the Spirit do mortify the deeds of the body, ye shall live. (If you are a Christian, you should actively, with the Holy Spirit's help, refuse to live your old, sinful lifestyle and begin to live after the Spirit (a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book). If you refuse to do this that is evidence that you aren't really a Christian.) For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God."

**If you are a Christian, the Holy Spirit will help you understand verses in the Bible that you wouldn't have understood if you were still unsaved – This is a crucial result to look for. Furthermore, the Holy Spirit will help you do what the Bible says to do and not do, while you follow Jesus. (For an example of how to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.) The Holy Spirit will urge and give you thoughts to do things such as witness to others, and when these people become saved or think about becoming saved, you will know that you were led by the Spirit of God and are a son of God. Some other examples are when the Holy Spirit gives you thoughts and urges you to give money to someone in need, and as a result, they get back on their feet. The Holy Spirit could also lead you to become someone's friend who isn't saved, and they later get saved because they saw how much joy and peace Jesus produced in your life.**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but the Holy Spirit hasn't helped you in these ways, follow chapter 41 of this book, and be sure you are really a Christian. It's possible, though, that a young Christian wouldn't see these kind of results until later, but if someone is really a Christian, they should see these kind of results sometime in their life.)

Romans 8:15 says, "For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father."

**If you are saved, the Holy Spirit will give you great assurance that you are going to heaven, and this will allow you to pray to God without hesitating or fearing (just like a child can approach their father). If you don't have this kind of assurance of your salvation, please follow chapter 41 of this book and be sure.**

Romans 8:16–17 explains, "The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God: And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer (being verbally or physically mistreated because you follow Jesus) with *him*, that we may be also glorified together."

**If you are a Christian, the Holy Spirit living inside you will allow you to be able to display the Fruits of the Spirit (Galatians 5:22–23) more and more over time (explained in chapter 21 of this book) and will give you the ability to serve the Lord (live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book), so people will praise and think good about God and want to become Christians too. In addition, you should face opposition from others (verbal or physical mistreatment, etc.) who are hostile toward your Christian beliefs and lifestyle some time in your life if you live long enough after you pray or make a decision to become a Christian.**

## Chapter 13

### CONTROLLING YOUR SPEECH

In James 3:9–12 we read, "Therewith bless we God, even the Father; and therewith curse we men, which are made after the similitude of God. Out of the same mouth proceedeth blessing and cursing. My brethren, these things ought not so to be. Doth a fountain send forth at the same place sweet *water* and bitter? Can the fig tree, my brethren, bear olive berries? either a vine, figs? so *can* no fountain both yield salt water and fresh."

**People may think they are Christians because they praise God, but if they say bad things to people and bad things about people, something is wrong. Check out the following verses that are similar to James 3:9-12:**

"Do all things without murmurings and disputings (**complaining and arguing**): That ye may be blameless and harmless, the sons of God, without rebuke, in the midst of a crooked and perverse nation, among whom ye shine as lights in the world." (Philippians 2:14–15)

"For he that will love life, and see good days, let him refrain his tongue from evil, and his lips that they speak no guile (**lying or misleading someone in order to get them to believe what is false or to get them not to believe what is true**)." (1 Peter 3:10)

"If any man among you seem to be religious, and bridled not his tongue, but deceiveth his own heart, this man's religion *is* vain." (James 1:26)

If someone argues a lot and professes to be a Christian, something is wrong.

If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you argue, complain, lie, mislead others to get them to believe what is false or to get them not to believe what is true, talk rude, scream at people, belittle others with your words, say bad things to people and bad things about people, talk perverted, try to intimidate or impress others with your words so they will admire you and not God, etc., please follow chapter 10 of this book.

Shortly into chapter 10, you should understand that the Bible teaches that it's possible to fail in your speech but be bothered by it, which means God is disciplining you as a son and is evidence that you are really a Christian. Although, James 3:1-8 explains that we aren't able to control our speech, which means that we aren't able to correct our sinful speech habits (those that have been explained in this chapter); only by becoming Christians, in which the Holy Spirit comes to live inside us and gives us the ability to not sin in our speech more and more over time (2 Corinthians 3:18), are we able to control and avoid sinning in our speech.

So, for example, if you take shots at people (verbally or through social media) you are jealous of in order to insult them, it's clearly sinful. It's even worse if you continue to do that and are pleased when you do so. Instead of feeling sorry for your actions, you are happy, and that's evidence you aren't really a Christian - Hebrews 12:5-8. Also, these words come from the heart. Luke 6:45 says, "A good man out of the good treasure of his heart bringeth forth that which is good; and an evil man out of the evil treasure of his heart bringeth forth that which is evil: for of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaketh." What you say determines what is in your heart. If you are determined to continually hurt certain people's feelings and are happy when you do it (Hebrews 12:5-8), this proves that your heart is in the wrong place. As Luke 6:45 reveals, you are an evil person.

This time, like those John the Baptist addressed in Luke 3:10-14, you know what you need to be willing to change about your character (repent) before you pray or make a decision again to become a Christian. As John the Baptist was preparing the way for Jesus by explaining repentance in the third chapter of Luke, people asked him how they needed to be willing to live (or repent). Luke 3:10-14 shares this, "And the people asked him, saying, What shall we do then? He answereth and saith unto them, He that hath two coats, let him impart to him that hath none; and he that hath meat, let him do likewise. Then came also publicans to be baptized, and said unto him, Master, what shall we do? And he said unto them, Exact no more than that which is appointed you. And the soldiers likewise demanded of him, saying, And what shall we do? And he said unto them, Do violence to no man, neither accuse any falsely; and be content with your wages." Therefore, if, for example, you love to repeatedly insult and talk bad about those you're jealous of in order to make yourself feel better about yourself (How can this not be hatred? First John 3:14 says, "We know that we have passed from death unto life, because we love the brethren. He that loveth not his

brother abideth in death." Hatred comes from the heart, and our speech reflects what's inside it (Luke 6:45)., and this doesn't bother you, you need to admit this to God and let Him know that you want to end this bitterness, jealousy, behavior, and all other sins. You need to confess that you "will" try to stop these things with His help after you tell Him that you trust Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and believe Jesus arose from the dead. In other words, you need to repent.

Obviously, failing to do this and believing you can correct yourself is prideful. James 4:6 shares, "... God resisteth the proud, but giveth grace unto the humble." In addition, James 3:1-8 confirms that we aren't able to control our speech, which means that we cannot correct this on our own. So, this is more evidence that you need to pray or make a decision to become a Christian again. Instead of being prideful and angry, know that God is reaching out to you and giving you a priceless gift: another chance of becoming a Christian, in which you were once blinded to.

## Chapter 14

### WHAT EXACTLY IS LOVE?

Loving others is a must for Christians (1 Peter 1:22). Love means that if you meet someone who has a physical, mental, emotional, spiritual, or financial need (If it's an expensive need, ask the church that you support or have supported financially with your offerings or other donations to help with the costs. The apostle Paul took up collections for expensive needs.), you should take care of those needs instead of your needs. (Hebrews 6:10 plainly puts it, "For God *is* not unrighteous to forget your work and labour of love, which ye have shewed toward his name, in that ye have ministered to the saints, and do minister.") You should be willing to die in order to protect or help someone who is different from you or even your enemy. This is love. Jesus displayed the ultimate example of love. We are very different from Him, but He loved us to the point of dying on a cross to erase our sins. Second John 1:6 also tells us that love is defined when Christians obey God's commandments, and 1 John 5:3 adds that keeping His commandments won't be grievous.

If you have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, you should try to obey Mark 12:30–31, "And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength: this *is* the first commandment. And the second *is* like, *namely* this, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself. There is none other commandment greater than these." **(After reading the following paragraphs for an explanation of Mark 12:30-31, you should easily see that obeying these verses will allow you to avoid sinning in many ways (1 Peter 4:8). If a Christian tries to obey these two commandments, they will naturally be able to obey the other commandants in the Old Testament.)**

**Whenever the Lord isn't leading you to try very hard to do things such as (while not doing them out of unwanted duty – explained in chapter 40 of this book):**

1. spend more of your money on things like evangelistic associations, charities, and things for God's purposes instead of entertainment (Technology items can be used and enjoyed for God's purposes, and parts of movies, for example, can be enjoyed in order to

glorify God.) and material things in order to show off and/or don't involve God (Matthew 6:19-21), if you have money left over from providing yourself with food, clothing, and shelter, you're willing to give to those who have needs (Luke 12:16-21) (or if it is an expensive need where a collection could be taken up, you want to ask the church that you attend or have supported financially to help meet their needs), give offerings to your church every week (1 Corinthians 16:2);

2. talk about the Lord and the Bible with people who will listen (Deuteronomy 6:7), teach people the Bible (Matthew 28:19), counsel with people who are having problems (Galatians 6:2), encourage others (Hebrews 10:25), correct believers when they sin (Galatians 6:1), tell people how to become Christians (2 Timothy 4:5) by mouth, through email or social media, and/or by handing out or dropping off tracts that explain how to become a Christian in places like stores or restaurants where people can pick them up, say things that can help and encourage others and isn't perverted, hateful, foul, threatening, argumentative, prideful, rude, trying to make fun of others, etc. (Ephesians 4:29), talk about a miracle you witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness you saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because God gifted them with that ability, how beautiful the weather and scenery is because God made it that way, or what is going on in heaven, etc. (Philippians 4:8) (Chapter 42 of this book has more helpful information on this topic.);

3. feed, clothe, and find shelter for the less fortunate, and visit people in hospitals and jails (Matthew 25:35-36; Mark 12:30-31);

4. do acts of kindness for people that will make God look good in front of others (for example - cook, clean, do yard work, help shop, wash cars, fix appliances) (Matthew 5:16);

5. try to do whatever the Holy Spirit gives you thoughts to say and do no matter how challenging they may be or who or what tries to stop you (James 4:17);

(Numbers 1-5 that were just mentioned describe - Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy strength.)

**you try to -**

**6. avoid saying, thinking, and doing things that you think might be sinful (Isaiah 30:21; Romans 14:23);**

**7. let Jesus be the Lord of your life (2 Corinthians 4:3-5; Romans 10:9; Acts 2:36) by taking over every “moment” of your life - Whatever you do (eat, drink, get ready for work or school, drive, shop, play golf, watch a sporting event, or mow the lawn, etc.), you want to try to do it to please God and try to think about things such as what you’ve read in the Bible (Psalm 119:15); pray (Matthew 6:9-13); think about things such as a miracle you witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness you saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because God gifted them with that ability, or imagine what will be going on in heaven when you get there, etc. (Philippians 4:8) while you eat, drink, get ready for work or school, drive, shop, play golf, watch a sporting event, or mow the lawn, etc. (1 Corinthians 10:31);**

**8. read through the Bible and do what it says to do and don’t do what it says not to do (James 1:22);**

**9. think about what you’ve read (Psalm 119:15);**

**10. think about things such as a miracle you witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness you saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because God gifted them with that ability, or imagine what will be going on in heaven when you get there, etc. (Philippians 4:8);**

**11. pray how Jesus taught in Matthew 6:9-13 by (admiring God, asking God to forgive you when you sin and try not to do it again (For a list of sins to avoid, please see chapter 35 of this book.), thank God for blessings and difficult circumstances (1 Thessalonians 5:18), and ask God to help you and others);**

(Numbers 6-11 that were just mentioned describe - Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy mind.)

**and you do these things because you sincerely care about others and want to help their physical, mental, emotional, spiritual, or financial needs; you don't want to sin by not saying or doing what the Holy Spirit urges and gives you thoughts to say or do (James 4:17), and you want people to think good about God (Matthew 5:16).**

(This describes - Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul.)

**Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself means if you come in contact with someone who, for example, is trying to understand something in the Bible, needs advice as to how to get through the trial they are having, is hungry, in need of shelter (However, if a stranger comes to your door and wants to move in, it would be good advice to take them to a homeless shelter.), clothing, or money (If someone needs a lot of money, you should ask the church that you support or have supported financially or a church in your area to help with the cost. The apostle Paul collected offerings from churches for expensive needs.), you should help meet those needs (Also, tell God that you are doing it for the Lord Jesus and are thankful for the opportunity. (Colossians 3:17)), because you are likely blessed with knowledge and resources such as those. The Parable of the Good Samaritan in Luke 10:25–37 gives the perfect example of this. The Samaritan in this parable did all he could to take care of the man that fell among thieves and was left half dead.**

**Also, for example, when you're hungry, you eat, and before you leave your home, you dress and put on shoes. So, in the same way you would do these things for yourself, you should help others who are hungry and can't afford to eat, for example.**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have not been living these ways, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

It says in 1 John 3:14, "We know that we have passed from death unto life, because we love the brethren. He that loveth not *his* brother abideth in death."

**If you have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but you hate (greatly dislike, boldly challenge, or disagree with someone over and over in your mind) anybody, no matter what they have done, (please follow chapter 10 of this book.)**

First John 5:3 says, "For this is the love of God, that we keep his commandments: and his commandments are not grievous."

**If you have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, you should try to do what the Bible says to do and don't do what it says not to do, and you should enjoy and want to live this way. Keeping God's commandments won't be miserable.**

First Corinthians 13:1–7 explains, "Though I speak with the tongues of men and of angels, and have not charity, I am become *as* sounding brass, or a tinkling cymbal. And though I have *the gift of* prophecy, and understand all mysteries, and all knowledge; and though I have all faith, so that I could remove mountains, and have not charity, I am nothing. And though I bestow all my goods to feed *the poor*, and though I give my body to be burned, and have not charity, it profiteth me nothing. Charity suffereth long, *and* is kind; charity envieth not; charity vaunteth not itself, is not puffed up, Doth not behave itself unseemly, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil; Rejoiceth not in iniquity, but rejoiceth in the truth; Beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things."

**You can do wonderful things for the Lord, but if you're repeatedly, without remorse, and purposefully not patient (giving up living the Christian lifestyle when people and things are difficult, getting back at people who did wrong to you, and getting upset or flustered while you're waiting on someone, for example), kind (helping those who have physical, mental, emotional, financial, or spiritual needs you come across), if you envy, brag, or are proud of your mind, body, accomplishments and/or possessions; think that you're better and more important than others, rude, insist on your own way, irritable and/or resentful, rejoice at wrongdoing, dwell over sins people have committed against you and hold grudges, have improper or dishonorable behavior toward people, blame people for having evil desires or intentions behind what they do, don't think the best of people, don't try to cover people's**

**faults (This doesn't apply to criminal activity.) and instead expose the wrong they did in order to make them look bad in front of others** (The three previous descriptions that are underlined do not apply to possible false teachers – explained in much of chapter 5 of this book. Also, the three previous descriptions that are underlined do not apply if there is impossible to deny evidence that their teaching is false – 1 Corinthians 13:7.), **and don't continue to forgive people who sin against you and expect that God will work everything out right, the good things about you don't count (1 Corinthians 13:1–6). You should also try to rejoice about the good things of someone and not believe they did wrong, but you should try to only believe they did wrong if there is impossible to deny evidence (1 Corinthians 13:7).**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., please follow chapter 10 of this book if you have not been obeying 1 Corinthians 13:1-7.)

If you have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, you shouldn't try to get even with those who have done wrong to you. Instead, you should do good things for them. Luke 6:35–36 says, "But love ye your enemies **(If you meet your enemy and they have a physical, mental, emotional, spiritual, or financial need (If it's an expensive need, ask the church that you support or have supported financially with your offerings or other donations to help with the costs. The apostle Paul took up collections for expensive needs.), you should take care of those needs instead of your needs. Also, you should be willing to die in order to help and/or protect them from harm.),** and do good, and lend **(except for things for no logical reason),** hoping for nothing again **(don't expect to get back what you let them borrow);** and your reward shall be great, and ye shall be the children of the Highest: for he is kind unto the unthankful and to the evil. Be ye therefore merciful, as your Father also is merciful **(Even though you've sinned against God, He showed amazing mercy to you when He sent His Son to die on the cross for your sins, so you can willingly show mercy to those who have sinned against you. Not only mercy, but you should be humble, gentle, and patient with each other's faults and difficult personalities (Ephesians 4:2).).**"

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have not been living this way, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

Matthew 5:44–45 informs, "But I say unto you, Love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them which despitefully use you, and persecute you; That ye may be the children of your Father which is in heaven: for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good, and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust."

**When someone hates you and treats you badly, you should love them (If you meet your enemy and they have a physical, mental, emotional, spiritual, or financial need (If it's an expensive need, ask the church that you support or have supported financially with your offerings or other donations to help with the costs. The apostle Paul took up collections for expensive needs.), you should take care of those needs instead of your needs. Also, you should be willing to die in order to help and/or protect them from harm.), ask God to bless them while they are screaming and cursing at you, look for ways to do nice things for them, and pray for people who take advantage of you and verbally or physically abuse you because you are trying to do good things for the Lord and live a pure life like Jesus lived. Those who aren't saved probably would not treat people who hate them and do wrong to them this way. This is a possible test that will help you to have assurance of your salvation - "That ye may be the children of your Father which is in heaven: for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good, and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust" (Matthew 5:45).**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have not been living this way, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

Similar verses are found in Matthew 5:38–42. **The purpose of Matthew 5:38-42 is to show that Christians shouldn't retaliate and seek revenge on anybody. These verses do not mean that you should let your enemies hit you, molest you, force you to become their slave, rob you, or vandalize your possessions without going to the police for help, because**

**those things are against the law (Romans 13:1-5). Also, your enemy could demand that you give them all your money, your house, and your clothes so you will be naked (Public nudity is against the law.), but clearly there would be no logical reason to do those things. For example, if Jesus was preaching to the multitudes, and one of His enemies ran up to Him and demanded that He stop preaching and start walking one mile because he or she said so, Jesus obviously would not have obeyed His enemy's orders. Jesus gave extreme examples like these to make the point that no matter how horrible your enemies treat you, you should not turn around and treat them in a negative way. They could verbally abuse and say horrible things about you to others, but that would be a perfect opportunity for you to please God by obeying the Bible and try to imitate the Lord Jesus Christ (your hero and the One who died so you can live in heaven for eternity) by being happy and thankful to God when your enemy or anyone else is rude and mistreats you (1 Thessalonians 5:16-18). The devil wants you to get angry and think bad thoughts about the people who are rude to you, but that would be an opportunity to defeat him and glorify God. Also, you will have one way to gain assurance of your salvation if you live this way (Matthew 5:45), and since these people are giving you these opportunities, you can develop major love for them. God is using these people to make you stronger. Instead of labeling them enemies, you can recognize them as people who are giving you one way to have assurance of your salvation. Believe me, a big weight was lifted off my shoulders when the Lord helped me realize this! So, these are huge reasons to be glad when others mistreat you and you face trials (James 1:2-4). With this mindset, James 2:12-13 can also be obeyed when you not only act as though people never mistreated you, which is a way to have assurance of salvation, but you can have major love for them.**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have not been living this way, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

In James 2:1-9 we read, "My brethren, have not the faith of our Lord Jesus Christ, *the Lord* of glory, with respect of persons. For if there come unto your assembly a man with a gold ring, in goodly apparel, and there come in also a poor man in vile raiment; And ye have respect to him that weareth the gay clothing, and say unto him, Sit thou here in a good place; and say to the poor,

Stand thou there, or sit here under my footstool: Are ye not then partial in yourselves, and are become judges of evil thoughts? Hearken, my beloved brethren, Hath not God chosen the poor of this world rich in faith, and heirs of the kingdom which he hath promised to them that love him? But ye have despised the poor. Do not rich men oppress you, and draw you before the judgment seats? Do not they blaspheme that worthy name by the which ye are called? If ye fulfil the royal law according to the scripture, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself, ye do well: But if ye have respect to persons, ye commit sin, and are convinced of the law as transgressors."

**If you have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, you should love everyone the same, and that means if you come across any person (rich, poor, or someone who hates you) who needs help, you should help them. These people may need to be lead to the Lord, taught the Bible, need advice on how to get through a problem they are going through, need food, clothing, and shelter; need someone who will visit them in the hospital or jail, or may need help paying their bills. People usually would treat someone they are close to this way, but whoever needs help you come across, you should treat them the same. You also shouldn't show favoritism. Someone who is rich should be treated the same as someone who is poor. Although, if a stranger comes to your door and wants to move in, it would be good advice to take them to a homeless shelter.**

**Another common mistake Christians make is being more enthusiastic and interested while talking with wealthy and well known people than they are while talking with poor people.**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have been guilty of these things, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

First Corinthians 8:1-3 adds, "Now as touching things offered unto idols, we know that we all have knowledge. Knowledge puffeth up, but charity edifieth. And if any man think that he knoweth any thing, he knoweth nothing yet as he ought to know. But if any man love God, the same is known of him."

**Some professed Christians tend to run around in packs and arrogantly act as though they have all the answers regarding the Bible, and those who disagree with them are evil. This**

**isn't love. Unfortunately, some are so deeply invested in their groups' views that they are unable to understand biblical truths that they would have understood if they had open minds. As a result, they stubbornly spread their false doctrines to others.**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have been guilty of this, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

The apostle Paul said in 2 Timothy 4:8, "Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing."

**Christians look forward to Christ's return.** If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you haven't been looking forward to Christ's return to take Christians out of this world to be with Him forever, ask God to forgive you for this and realize that this is going to be simply amazing.

## Chapter 15

### TRIALS

Whenever you face trials (problems with your family, job, friends, church, financial situations, physical and mental health, etc.), it is a perfect opportunity to see if you are really a Christian. Check out these verses:

“My brethren, count it all joy when ye fall into divers temptations; Knowing *this*, that the trying of your faith worketh patience. But let patience have *her* perfect work, that ye may be perfect and entire, wanting nothing.” (James 1:2–4)

“And ye shall be hated of all *men* for my name's sake: but he that endureth to the end shall be saved.” (Matthew 10:22)

“They went out from us, but they were not of us; for if they had been of us, they would *no doubt* have continued with us: but *they went out*, that they might be made manifest that they were not all of us.” (1 John 2:19)

“Wherein ye greatly rejoice, though now for a season, if need be, ye are in heaviness through manifold temptations: That the trial of your faith, being much more precious than of gold that perisheth, though it be tried with fire, might be found unto praise and honour and glory at the appearing of Jesus Christ:” (1 Peter 1:6-7)

**If you profess to be a Christian, but you quit living the Christian lifestyle (See chapter 39 of this book for an example of the Christian lifestyle.) because you experienced a trial or several trials, please follow chapter 10 of this book. Not giving up living the Christian lifestyle during trials is a great way to have assurance of salvation (1 John 2:19), but part of the testing (1 Peter 1:6-7) is whether you develop hatred for the person responsible for your trial. If you have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian but have developed hatred for someone, please follow chapter 10 of this book.**

**If you're in a situation and don't know what decision to make, you should ask God to give you wisdom (James 1:5), and believe that He will answer that prayer. While you're**

patiently (trying not to be irritable, mad, flustered, or depressed) waiting for God to lead you in the right direction, you should focus on living the Christian lifestyle. (For an example of how to live the Christian lifestyle, see chapter 39 of this book.) Also while you are going through trials, Psalm 71:14-24 gives very good insight as well.

Romans 8:28 is another word of encouragement for Christians going through trials, and it says, “And we know that all things work together for good to them that love God, to them who are the called according to *his* purpose.”

If you have accepted Jesus as your Savior and are living a similar lifestyle to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book, “everything” that happens in your life (good and bad) is designed to help you be closer to God. So instead of going through life worrying about your circumstances, realize that God is in control of every second of each day, and no matter how horrible things are in your life, He allowed it to happen, and something good will come out of it (even though you may not notice it). When you think about it, Christians are invincible. Their minds and bodies may be tormented every day, but they are really in God’s protective bubble forever!

Another way to visualize this is that Christians are riding an escalator on a straight path to heaven. On this ride, they will experience mental and physical suffering (broken bones, job loses, problems with family and friends, car wrecks, headaches, fevers, etc.), but God knows when these things will happen and allows them to happen; it is part of the ride. There is no escaping it, but it is very comforting to know that this escalator ride ends at heaven.

Christians have the responsibility to trust that God has everything under control. First Peter 4:12-13 reveals, “Beloved, think it not strange concerning the fiery trial which is to try you, as though some strange thing happened unto you: But rejoice, inasmuch as ye are partakers of Christ's sufferings; that, when his glory shall be revealed, ye may be glad also with exceeding joy.”

In other words, when bad things happen to Christians, they shouldn’t be surprised, because this is part of the escalator ride to heaven. The escalator doesn’t stop when problems happen; it keeps moving and stops when it reaches the gates of heaven. The ride is very rough, but it

**becomes perfectly smooth once it stops at the gates of heaven. So, when a Christian loses a loved one, they need to realize this is part of the ride and continue to live the Christian lifestyle. (An example of the Christian lifestyle is explained in chapter 39 of this book.) When a Christian loses their money, they need to realize this is part of the ride and continue to live the Christian lifestyle. This pattern should be used for every problem.**

Christians should also patiently (without quitting the Christian lifestyle) face another type trial sometime in their lives if they live long enough after they have become Christians, and that is persecution (being verbally or physically attacked because they identify as Christians or participate in Christian activity such as witnessing to or helping people who are in need or have other problems) (1 Peter 2:20-21; 2 Timothy 3:12). When this happens, they should follow 1 Peter 2:23 by not retaliating when they are insulted or threaten revenge. Instead, they should leave these matters to God.

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you haven't been living the way this chapter has explained, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

## Chapter 16

### THE PARABLE OF THE SOWER

Understanding the Parable of the Sower (Matthew 13:1–23) is a great way to know if you are saved. **"Not everyone who prays or makes decisions to become Christians are going to heaven."** A perfect example of this is 2 Timothy 4:10 which says, "For Demas hath forsaken me, having loved this present world, and is departed unto Thessalonica; Crescens to Galatia, Titus unto Dalmatia." **Demas obviously trusted Jesus' work on the cross to save him and was living like a Christian because he worked with the apostle Paul, but he gave up living that lifestyle and didn't endure to the end (Matthew 10:22), because he loved this present world (2 Timothy 4:10). As a result, Demas went back to living his old lifestyle and proved he wasn't saved in the first place.** First John 2:15–17 says, "Love not the world, neither the things *that are* in the world. If any man love the world (**Demas was guilty of this.**), the love of the Father is not in him. For all that *is* in the world, the lust of the flesh (**wanting to or doing the following: committing sins mentioned in chapters 18 and 35 of this book, spending your time (other than work or school, etc.), thoughts, conversations with people who will listen (Deuteronomy 6:7 and see chapter 42 of this book for helpful information), the way you handle your money (explained in chapter 19 of this book), physical safety (Matthew 10:28), what you watch and listen to (explained in chapter 23 of this book), your plans for each day, and future goals on what you want instead of what God wants**), and the lust of the eyes (**wanting everything you see**), and the pride of life (**thinking that your mind, body, accomplishments, and possessions are much better than others**), is not of the Father, but is of the world. And the world passeth away, and the lust thereof: but he that doeth the will of God abideth for ever (**whoever is saved and shows evidence they are saved by avoiding the lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life**)."

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have been guilty of the lust of the flesh, the lust of the eyes, and/or the pride of life, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

We can use Demas' example for the Parable of the Sower. This parable means that someone who hears the gospel (**how they can become a Christian**) responds in four different ways, and only one response proves they have truly been saved:

1. They reject it (Matthew 13:19).

2. They ask Jesus into their heart, believe that Jesus is their Savior, or trust Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase their sins and let them into heaven and believe He arose from the dead, etc., but when trials come and people mistreat them because they attempt to follow Jesus, they become discouraged and go back to living their old lifestyle (Matthew 13:20-21).

3. **(This was Demas' problem (2 Timothy 4:10))**. They ask Jesus into their heart, believe that Jesus is their Savior, or trust Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase their sins and let them into heaven and believe He arose from the dead, etc., and they begin to do things such as read the Bible, pray, serve others, and go to church, but over time they begin to spend their time with things such as entertainment that doesn't involve God (Technology items can be used and enjoyed for God's purposes, and parts of movies, for example, can be enjoyed in order to glorify God.) and material things in order to show off. They also spend more of their time, thoughts, and effort toward everyday things of this life and trying to or wanting to become rich in order to show off. As a result, they give up living the Christian lifestyle and return to their old lifestyle (Matthew 13:22).

4. This is the only type of response that proves someone has been saved (Matthew 13:23), with the exception of people who pass on a short time later. They ask Jesus into their heart, believe that Jesus is their Savior, or trust Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase their sins and let them into heaven and believe He arose from the dead, etc., and as a result, they follow Jesus (live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book). Second Corinthians 13:5 instructs us to, "Examine yourselves, whether ye be in the faith; prove your own selves. Know ye not your own selves, how that Jesus Christ is in you, except ye be reprobates **(not really saved)**?" In addition to having confidence that their sins are forgiven, the key is that they continue to bear good fruit for the rest of their life by doing things such as, spending more of their money on things like evangelistic associations, charities, and things for God's purposes instead of entertainment (Technology items can be used and enjoyed for God's purposes, and parts of movies, for example, can be enjoyed in order to glorify God.) and material things in order to show off and/or don't

involve God (Matthew 6:19-21), if they have money left over from providing them self with food, clothing, and shelter, they're willing to give to those who have needs and/or ask the church they support or have supported financially to help meet their needs (Luke 12:16-21), teaching people the Bible (Matthew 28:19), counseling people (Galatians 6:2), encouraging others (Hebrews 10:25), correcting believers when they sin (Galatians 6:1), telling people how to become Christians (2 Timothy 4:5), feeding, clothing, and finding shelter for the less fortunate; visiting people in hospitals and jails (Matthew 25:35-36; Mark 12:30-31; Titus 3:14), doing acts of kindness (Matthew 5:16; Titus 3:14), becoming more holy in the way they live (They live a set-apart lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book.) (Romans 6:22), sharing their material possessions (Romans 15:28), having Jesus' character traits (Galatians 5:22-23) (explained in chapter 21 of this book), praising the Lord (Hebrews 13:15), and answered prayer (1 John 5:14-15). They also do these things because they're thankful for Jesus dying on the cross to erase their sins, and they love Him more than anything or anyone (Psalm 139:23-24).

Jesus said in John 15:4-6, "Abide **(This word means to remain or stay with. In this case, a Christian continues to follow Jesus (imitate and obey/walk even as he walked – 1 John 2:6) for the rest of their life. Someone who believes they can go to heaven because they believe in Jesus, but they know they aren't going to follow Jesus for the rest of their lives (abide in Him), needs to know that it doesn't work that way (Matthew 10:38).)** in me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself, except it abide in the vine; no more can ye, except ye abide in me. I am the vine, ye *are* the branches: He that abideth in me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit: for without me ye can do nothing. If a man abide not in me, he is cast forth as a branch, and is withered; and men gather them, and cast *them* into the fire, and they are burned." **You can see that if a professing Christian doesn't abide in Jesus (continue to follow Jesus (For an example of how to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.) throughout their life, they will be useless and won't bear good fruit. (For a list of fruits that Christians display, please see the previous paragraph.) This is one of the ways they can know they are really a Christian. Matthew 7:15-20 expounds upon this, "Beware of false prophets, which come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves. Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles? Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit. A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither *can* a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit. Every tree that bringeth not forth**

**good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire. Wherefore by their fruits ye shall know them.”**  
**– (have evidence they are really Christians)**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have not been abiding in Jesus, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

**So, how can someone know if they will begin to bear good fruit after they trust Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase their sins and let them into heaven and believe He arose from the dead? Chapter 8 of this book (Which Road Are You On?) answers this important question.**

## Chapter 17

### THE SERMON ON THE MOUNT

The following are some verses from Jesus' Sermon on the Mount: "Blessed *are* the poor in spirit: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven. **(These are people who realize they are lost and need to be saved.)** Blessed *are* they that mourn: for they shall be comforted. **(These are Christians who are very upset when they sin and see and hear evil around them.)** Blessed *are* the meek: for they shall inherit the earth. **(These are Christians who can avoid sinning when people say and do mean things to them. Instead, they will ask God to bless them and not retaliate. If they still only had their old sinful nature, they would have been rude to the person who was rude to them, but now that they are meek, that doesn't happen as much. We shouldn't worry about retaliating because Job 13:5 says, "O that ye would altogether hold your peace! and it should be your wisdom." God will take up for us and fight our battles for us.)** Blessed *are* they, which do hunger and thirst after righteousness: for they shall be filled. **(These are Christians who realize that the only true purpose in life is to follow Jesus, and they want to spend their lives trying to do that – For an example of how to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.)** Blessed *are* the merciful: for they shall obtain mercy. **(These are Christians who are forgiving, and they don't try to punish others who did wrong to them and make their lives miserable.)** Blessed *are* the pure in heart: for they shall see God. **(These are Christians whose only purpose and desire (Colossians 2:11) each day is to follow Jesus - For an example of how to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.)** Blessed *are* the peacemakers: for they shall be called the children of God. **(These are Christians who try to help those who are mad at each other solve their differences.)** Blessed *are* they which are persecuted for righteousness' sake: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven. **(These are Christians who follow Jesus (For an example of how to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.) in order to make God look good/cause people to think good about God, and as a result, people do things like try to ruin the good they were trying to do, make fun of them, talk bad about them, treat them unfairly at their jobs, scream at them, hit them, try to kill them, and put them in prison, etc.)** Blessed are ye, when *men* shall revile you, and persecute *you*, and shall say all manner of evil

against you falsely, for my sake. Rejoice, and be exceeding glad: for great *is* your reward in heaven: for so persecuted they the prophets which were before you." (Matthew 5:3–12)

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have not been living the way these verses have explained, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

Before you begin studying the following verses from the Sermon on the Mount, many church leaders teach that the Sermon on the Mount doesn't have anything to do with the gospel; therefore, it doesn't apply to us. If you have read chapters 1 and 5 of this book, you will see that repentance (being willing to begin living the way God wants us to live after we accept Jesus as our Savior) is involved in someone becoming a Christian by preparing their heart to receive Jesus. So, for example, would these church leaders say that it is wrong for a Christian to tell a sinner that if they want to become a Christian, they need to be willing to begin thinking the way God wants them to think (For example, stop hating people - Matthew 5:43-45), and if they are willing to begin thinking this way after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian, they are ready to become a Christian by trusting Jesus' work on the cross to save them and believing He arose from the dead? (Although, a sinner doesn't have the ability to live the way the Sermon on the Mount explains, they will after they become a Christian and grow in that lifestyle.)

In Matthew 5:21–22 we read, "Ye have heard that it was said by them of old time, Thou shalt not kill; and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment: But I say unto you, That whosoever is angry with his brother without a cause shall be in danger of the judgment: and whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council: but whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire."

**You can be angry with someone without a cause and/or name call, and you would be as guilty as someone who had committed murder. It's normal to be angry with people who sin against you, though, but dwelling on it for an extended time or retaliating and bearing a grudge is sinful (Ephesians 4:26; Romans 12:19; Leviticus 19:18).**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have been guilty of this, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

Then in Matthew 5:27–30 it says, "Ye have heard that it was said by them of old time, Thou shalt not commit adultery: But I say unto you, That whosoever looketh on a woman to lust after her hath committed adultery with her already in his heart. And if thy right eye offend thee, pluck it out, and cast *it* from thee: for it is profitable for thee that one of thy members should perish, and not *that* thy whole body should be cast into hell. And if thy right hand offend thee, cut it off, and cast *it* from thee: for it is profitable for thee that one of thy members should perish, and not *that* thy whole body should be cast into hell."

**Wanting (coveting) another man's wife should be avoided (Matthew 5:27-30), and it also becomes sinful when you plan how and when you will do any form of a sexual act (Ephesians 5:3) with someone you aren't married to (This is evil desire (Colossians 3:5) and impure thoughts (Philippians 4:8).) and carry those acts out (James 1:14-15). When you do these sexual acts, you give in to impurity (1 Thessalonians 4:7; Colossians 3:5) and aren't able to control your body in sanctification and honor (1 Thessalonians 4:3-5). If you aren't able to stop doing sexual acts, you should become married – 1 Corinthians 7:9.**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have been guilty of this, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

It says in Matthew 5:37, "But let your communication be, Yea, yea; Nay, nay: for whatsoever is more than these cometh of evil."

**A lot of people sin many times each day and don't realize it. Matthew 5:37 is an example of this. When you have conversations, you should avoid saying that you might do something. You should say, "I will" or "I won't". James 4:13-15 adds, "Go to now, ye that say, To day or to morrow we will go into such a city, and continue there a year, and buy and sell, and get**

**gain: Whereas ye know not what *shall be* on the morrow. For what *is* your life? It is even a vapour, that appeareth for a little time, and then vanisheth away. For that ye *ought* to say, If the Lord will, we shall live, and do this, or that.” For example, if someone asks if you will be at church tomorrow, you should say, “I’ll be there Lord willing.” It is important to ask God to forgive you the moment that you realize you have sinned in any way, so your prayers can be answered (Psalm 66:18). It is also good advice to ask God to forgive you for sinning that day in ways that you didn’t realize you had before you go to bed each night.**

Matthew 5:43-45 explains, "Ye have heard that it hath been said, Thou shalt love thy neighbour, and hate thine enemy. But I say unto you, Love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them which despitefully use you, and persecute you; That ye may be the children of your Father which is in heaven: for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good, and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust.”

**When someone hates you and treats you badly, you should love them (If you meet your enemy and they have a physical, mental, emotional, spiritual, or financial need (If it’s an expensive need, ask the church that you support or have supported financially with your offerings or other donations to help with the costs. The apostle Paul took up collections for expensive needs.), you should take care of those needs instead of your needs. Also, you should be willing to die in order to help and/or protect them from harm.), ask God to bless them while they are screaming and cursing at you, look for ways to do nice things for them, and pray for people who take advantage of you and verbally or physically abuse you because you are trying to do good things for the Lord and live a pure life like Jesus lived. Those who aren’t saved probably would not treat people who hate them and do wrong to them this way. This is a possible test that could help you to know that you are really a Christian - "That ye may be the children of your Father which is in heaven: for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good, and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust" (Matthew 5:45).**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have not been living this way, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

Matthew 5:46-47 teaches, “For if ye love them which love you, what reward have ye? do not even the publicans the same? And if ye salute your brethren only, what do ye more *than others?* do not even the publicans so?”

**Christians should love everyone (If they come across someone who has a physical, mental, emotional, spiritual, or financial need, they should try to take care of those needs instead of their needs. Also, they should be willing to die in order to help or protect others from harm), not just those who love them.**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have not been living this way, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

Matthew 5:48 proclaims, “Be ye therefore perfect, even as your Father which is in heaven is perfect.”

**Your goal should be to try to live perfectly like Jesus lived. Similar verses are 1 John 3:2-3, "Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is. And every man that hath this hope in him purifieth himself, even as he is pure." If Christians try to be perfect now, they will have a way to have assurance of their salvation.**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have not tried to live this way, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

(If you have not prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

Matthew 6:14–15 says, "For if ye forgive men their trespasses **(sins they committed against you)**, your heavenly Father will also forgive you: But if ye forgive not men their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses."

**If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are guilty of this, please forgive that person and/or others so God will answer your prayers (Psalm 66:18).**

And in Matthew 7:12 we read, "Therefore all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them: for this is the law and the prophets. **(This summarizes the commandments in the Old Testament.)**"

**This is an important summary of how to treat others. Nobody wants someone looking at them mean and rude, arguing with them, making fun of them, trying to make them feel bad, talking bad about them, thinking bad about them, lying to them, stealing from them, and intimidating them. Therefore, you shouldn't treat others these ways. Also, for example, if you were a professional football player, coach, or referee, you wouldn't want someone (who is watching you on TV) to criticize or make fun of you and think bad thoughts about you. Instead of these negative things, you would want people to say, think, and do the exact opposite to you.**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have not been living this way, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

**After Jesus concluded His Sermon on the Mount (Matthew 5-7), the people were left with the decision to either accept or reject His invitation to begin living this new and radical lifestyle.**

(If you have not prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

## Chapter 18

### COMMANDMENTS THAT CAN'T BE IGNORED

Jesus said in John 14:15, "If ye love me, keep my commandments." There's nobody in heaven who doesn't love Jesus, so this verse means if you are saved, you should try to keep Jesus' commandments the best that you can.

There are many examples of sins to avoid in the Bible. For example, in Galatians 5:19–21 we read, "Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are *these*; Adultery (**having sexual relations with someone other than their spouse**), fornication (**having sex before marriage**), uncleanness (**committing all types of sexual acts with someone other than the person they are married to.**), lasciviousness (**having strong desires to sin and aren't ashamed of it and actually committing the sins without restraint**). Idolatry (**spending time, thoughts, and effort on something other than following Jesus – (For an example of how to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.)**), witchcraft (**sorcery and the use of drugs**), hatred (**greatly disliking, boldly challenging, or disagreeing with someone over and over in your mind**), variance (**This is when you act out the hatred you have in your mind. It also means when you don't agree with others who are correct on a matter, and you actively go against what is normal.**), emulations (**wanting or trying to be like or better than someone you are rivals with and are jealous of. This also involves competing with your rival in order to try to make them look bad in the eyes of others. Jealousy and selfish ambition lead to every other evil (James 3:16).**), wrath (**all of a sudden having a noticeable outburst of anger and rage**), strife (**a bitter conflict that can sometimes result in violence. This also means when someone in a church goes against or twists the truths in the Bible and wants things to go their way, and as a result, it creates division within their church.**), seditions (**division within a church**), heresies (**This happens when someone joins a side due to a division. Seditious and heresies happen when church leaders try to get the congregation to follow them and not the Bible. Seditious and heresies can also happen in other settings**), Envyings (**when you carry a grudge with someone because they have something you want**), murders, drunkenness, revellings (**when a group of people**

**make a party out of having sex**), and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told *you* in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God."

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are guilty of these sins, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

**If someone claims to be a Christian and continually commits the sins that were just listed (or any other sins) on purpose, and they don't feel sorry and/or try not to do them again, that person is not a Christian. A Christian can and will very likely commit some of these sins repeatedly, but that Christian should feel bad about it and should ask God to forgive them for those sins and try their best, with the Holy Spirit's help, not to do them again.** (If you continually commit sins on purpose, and you aren't bothered and upset because of it (Hebrews 12:5–11), please pray or make a decision again to become a Christian. Please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

The following are sections in the Bible that are similar to Galatians 5:19–21:

"Knowing this, that the law is not made for a righteous man, but for the lawless **(those who don't follow the law)**

and disobedient **(people who don't obey what is commanded in the Bible, don't obey the law, and children not obeying their parents when they are told what to do or not to do),**

for the ungodly **(those who don't worry about disappointing God by sinning or care to worship Him; break His commandments; give up living the Christian lifestyle because of trials (patience); aren't able to control themselves by giving in to anger (It's normal to be angry with people who sin against them, though, but dwelling on it for an extended time or retaliating and bearing a grudge is sinful (Ephesians 4:26; Romans 12:19; Leviticus 19:18).), lust (For example, wanting (coveting) another man's wife should be avoided (Matthew 5:27-30), and it also becomes sinful when someone plans how and when they will do any form of a sexual act (Ephesians 5:3) with someone they aren't married to (This is evil desire (Colossians 3:5) and impure thoughts (Philippians 4:8).) and carry those acts out (James**

1:14-15). When they do these sexual acts, they give in to impurity (1 Thessalonians 4:7, Colossians 3:5) and weren't able to control their body in sanctification and honor (1 Thessalonians 4:3-5). If they aren't able to stop doing sexual acts, they should become married – 1 Corinthians 7:9.), entertainment that doesn't involve God (see chapter 23 of this book), over eating, etc. (temperance); don't do what's right because it could lead to physical, mental, and/or financial suffering and trials; and those who don't follow Jesus. (For an example of how to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.)

and for sinners (people who haven't (asked Jesus into their heart, believed that Jesus is their Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase their sins and let them into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc.), and as a result, they don't try to follow Jesus (For an example of how to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.) for the rest of their lives.),

for unholy (people who aren't Christians and don't live set-apart lifestyles similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book as a result)

and profane (those who abuse things that are holy and disrespect God),

for murderers of fathers and murderers of mothers, for manslayers (killing someone),

For whoremongers (those who have sexual relations with prostitutes and/or make money by charging people to have sex with prostitutes),

for them that defile themselves with mankind (those who spend time with sinful people and begin to live like them),

for menstealers, for liars,

for perjured persons (people who lie while under oath), and if there be any other thing that is contrary to sound doctrine;" (1 Timothy 1:9–10).

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are guilty of these sins, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

**If someone claims to be a Christian and continually commits the sins that were just listed (or any other sins) on purpose, and they don't feel sorry and/or try not to do them again, that person is not a Christian. A Christian can and will very likely commit some of these sins repeatedly, but that Christian should feel bad about it and should ask God to forgive them for those sins and try their best, with the Holy Spirit's help, not to do them again.** (If you continually commit sins on purpose, and you aren't bothered and upset because of it (Hebrews 12:5–11), please pray or make a decision again to become a Christian. Please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

"This know also, that in the last days perilous times shall come. For men shall be lovers of their own selves **(spending their time, thoughts, and effort on pleasing and taking care of themselves instead of living a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book (following Jesus))**, covetous **(desiring to have something that doesn't belong to them, which can lead to sin by taking it or carrying a grudge. In general, it's greed (the obsession of accumulating things, such as wealth and material goods, and this is more important to the greedy person than the things of God).)**, boasters **(people who brag about how excellent they, their possessions, and/or their accomplishments are in order to impress others)**, proud **(those who think they are excellent in many ways. For example, they may think that their mind, body, possessions, accomplishments, job, country, and church are much better than others')**, blasphemers **(people who make fun of and/or disrespect God in their minds or out loud)**, disobedient to parents, unthankful, unholy **(those who aren't Christians and don't live set-apart lifestyles similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book as a result)**, Without natural affection **(those who hate others)**, trucebreakers **(people who break their promises)**, false accusers **(people who claim that someone said or did something that they didn't really say or do)**, incontinent **(unmarried people who don't hold back their desires to have sex)**, fierce **(people who are eager to be and easily become violent and furious)**, despisers of those that are good, Traitors **(those who turn on their country or the place they are supposed to defend, and they let the enemy take over and defeat them)**, heady **(people who violently hurry to make decisions, even though it could lead to harm)**, highminded **(people who think they are better and more important than others)**, lovers of pleasures more than lovers of God **(those who enjoy**

**pleasing and entertaining themselves with things that don't involve God more than they enjoy following Jesus – For an example of this lifestyle, see chapter 39 of this book.);** Having a form of godliness, but denying the power thereof: from such turn away **(Christians shouldn't hang around people who appear to live godly but won't trust Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase their sins and let them into heaven and believe He arose from the dead.)**" (2 Timothy 3:1–5).

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are guilty of these sins, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

**If someone claims to be a Christian and continually commits the sins that were just listed (or any other sins) on purpose, and they don't feel sorry and/or try not to do them again, that person is not a Christian. A Christian can and will very likely commit some of these sins repeatedly, but that Christian should feel bad about it and should ask God to forgive them for those sins and try their best, with the Holy Spirit's help, not to do them again.** (If you continually commit sins on purpose, and you aren't bothered and upset because of it (Hebrews 12:5–11), please pray or make a decision again to become a Christian. Please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

"And he said, That which cometh out of the man, that defileth **(makes someone sinful)** the man. For from within, out of the heart of men, proceed evil thoughts, adulteries **(having sexual relations with someone other than their spouse)**, fornications **(having sex before marriage)**, murders, Thefts, covetousness **(wanting something that someone else has, which can lead to sin by taking it or carrying a grudge. In general, it's greed (the obsession of accumulating things, such as wealth and material goods, and this is more important to the greedy person than the things of God).)**, wickedness **(evil actions)**, deceit **(misleading someone to get them to believe what is false or get them not to believe what is true)**, lasciviousness **(having strong desires to sin and aren't ashamed of it and actually committing the sins without restraint)**, an evil eye **(being jealous of others and wanting something that someone else has)**, blasphemy **(making fun of and disrespecting God in your mind or out loud)**, pride **(thinking that you are excellent in many ways. For example, you may think that your mind, body, possessions,**

**accomplishments, job, country, and church are much better than others), foolishness (not making right and careful choices): All these evil things come from within, and defile the man (makes someone sinful)" (Mark 7:20–23).**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are guilty of these sins, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

**If someone claims to be a Christian and continually commits the sins that were just listed (or any other sins) on purpose, and they don't feel sorry and/or try not to do them again, that person is not a Christian. A Christian can and will very likely commit some of these sins repeatedly, but that Christian should feel bad about it and should ask God to forgive them for those sins and try their best, with the Holy Spirit's help, not to do them again.** (If you continually commit sins on purpose, and you aren't bothered and upset because of it (Hebrews 12:5–11), please pray or make a decision again to become a Christian. Please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

"He that overcometh shall inherit all things; and I will be his God, and he shall be my son. **(those who haven't given up trying to follow Jesus (live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book) after they trusted Him to erase their sins)** But the fearful **(those who are afraid to witness to and do things to help others because they are afraid they will be physically harmed, robbed, or killed by people who are angry because they think they are a Christian),** and unbelieving **(those who don't believe that Jesus is the Savior and the Way to heaven),** and the abominable **(people who are guilty of evil in their thoughts, sight, taste, hearing, and touch),** and murderers, and whoremongers **(those who have sexual relations with prostitutes and/or make money by charging people to have sex with prostitutes),** and sorcerers, and idolaters **(those who spend their time, thoughts, and effort on anything other than following Jesus – For an example of how to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.),** and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death" (Revelation 21:7–8)

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are guilty of these sins, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

**If someone claims to be a Christian and continually commits the sins that were just listed (or any other sins) on purpose, and they don't feel sorry and/or try not to do them again, that person is not a Christian. A Christian can and will very likely commit some of these sins repeatedly, but that Christian should feel bad about it and should ask God to forgive them for those sins and try their best, with the Holy Spirit's help, not to do them again.** (If you continually commit sins on purpose, and you aren't bothered and upset because of it (Hebrews 12:5–11), please pray or make a decision again to become a Christian. Please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

"Know ye not that the unrighteous (**people who aren't Christians and don't obey the commands in the Bible as a result**) shall not inherit the kingdom of God? Be not deceived: neither fornicators (**those who have sex before marriage**), nor idolaters (**those who spend their time, thoughts, and effort on anything other than following Jesus – For an example of how to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.**), nor adulterers (**those who have sexual relations with someone other than their spouse**), nor effeminate (**male prostitutes**), nor abusers of themselves with mankind (**men who have sex with other men**), Nor thieves, nor covetous (**people who want something that someone else has, which can lead to sin by taking it or carrying a grudge. In general, it's greed (the obsession of accumulating things, such as wealth and material goods, and this is more important to the greedy person than the things of God).**), nor drunkards, nor revilers (**those who talk badly to others**), nor extortioners (**someone who takes something from someone physically or by an illegal use of power**), shall inherit the kingdom of God. And such were some of you (**Before becoming Christians, many practice these kind of sins on purpose.**): but ye are washed, but ye are sanctified, but ye are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God (**People who are Christians do not practice sins on purpose anymore. If they do give in and decide to sin, they should ask God to forgive them for doing that and try their best not to do it again.**)" (1 Corinthians 6:9–11).

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are guilty of these sins, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

**If someone claims to be a Christian and continually commits the sins that were just listed (or any other sins) on purpose, and they don't feel sorry and/or try not to do them again, that person is not a Christian. A Christian can and will very likely commit some of these sins repeatedly, but that Christian should feel bad about it and should ask God to forgive them for those sins and try their best, with the Holy Spirit's help, not to do them again.** (If you continually commit sins on purpose, and you aren't bothered and upset because of it (Hebrews 12:5–11), please pray or make a decision again to become a Christian. Please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

“Wherefore God also gave them up **(These people had refused to turn from their sins and receive Christ as their Savior so many times, that God lost His patience and quit giving them opportunities to receive salvation. A similar verse is Proverbs 29:1, “He, that being often reproveth hardeneth his neck, shall suddenly be destroyed, and that without remedy.”** **Someone can refuse or put off their decision to become a Christian a certain number of times, and their heart can become too hard to receive salvation. Each time they say no to Christ, their heart can become harder.**) to uncleanness **(sexual relations before marriage)** through the lusts of their own hearts **(The sin of uncleanness occurs because people have desires to and begin to plan how and when they will commit those acts.)**, to dishonour their own bodies between themselves: Who changed the truth of God into a lie, and worshipped and served the creature more than the Creator, who is blessed for ever. Amen. For this cause God gave them up **(See note at the beginning of this paragraph (Romans 1:24).)** unto vile affections **(women having sex with women and men having sex with men)**: for even their women did change the natural use into that which is against nature: And likewise also the men, leaving the natural use of the woman, burned in their lust one toward another; men with men working that which is unseemly **(Clearly after reading this, practicing homosexuality is sinful.)**, and receiving in themselves that recompence of their error which was meet. And even as they did not like to retain God in *their* knowledge **(They refused to listen to God.)**, God gave them over to a reprobate mind **(This is**

**referring to people who have said no to the Holy Spirit urging them to repent of their ways and get saved a certain number of times, and as a result, their hearts have become too hard. This means they are unable to become a Christian.**), to do those things which are not convenient; Being filled with all unrighteousness (**not obeying the commands in the Bible**), fornication (**having sex before marriage**), wickedness (**causing or likely to cause harm or trouble**), covetousness (**wanting something that someone else has, which can lead to sin by taking it or carrying a grudge. In general, it's greed (the obsession of accumulating things, such as wealth and material goods, and this is more important to the greedy person than the things of God).**), maliciousness (**causing harm to someone for no reason**); full of envy (**frequently carrying a grudge due to having a strong desire for something someone else has**), murder, debate (**arguing**), deceit (**misleading someone to get them to believe what is false or getting them not to believe what is true**), malignity (**having extreme hatred toward someone**); whisperers (**those who secretly lie in order to hurt peoples' reputations**), Backbiters (**those who say evil things about others who aren't around to hear**), haters of God (**those who dislike, boldly challenge, or disagree with God over and over in their minds**), spiteful (**those who hate their enemies so much that it leads to violence against them**), proud (**people who think they are excellent in many ways. For example, they may think that their mind, body, possessions, accomplishments, job, country, and church are much better than others.**), boasters (**those who brag about how excellent they, their possessions, or accomplishments are in order to impress others**), inventors of evil things, disobedient to parents, Without understanding (**those who don't agree with the truths in the Bible**), covenantbreakers (**people who break their contracts or agreements**), without natural affection (**those who don't love others**), implacable (**those who hate others and never stop their hatred**), unmerciful (**those who cruelly punish others and never spares or forgives them**): Who knowing the judgment of God, that they which commit such things are worthy of death, not only do the same, but have pleasure in them that do them (**If you enjoy when people sin in such ways, you are just as guilty as them.**)" (Romans 1:24–32).

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are guilty of these sins, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

**If someone claims to be a Christian and continually commits the sins that were just listed (or any other sins) on purpose, and they don't feel sorry and/or try not to do them again, that person is not a Christian. A Christian can and will very likely commit some of these sins repeatedly, but that Christian should feel bad about it and should ask God to forgive them for those sins and try their best, with the Holy Spirit's help, not to do them again.** (If you continually commit sins on purpose, and you aren't bothered and upset because of it (Hebrews 12:5–11), please pray or make a decision again to become a Christian. Please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

There are several Bible verses that teach that men who have sex with men and women who have sex with women (and it doesn't bother them) aren't really saved. First John 5:18 says, "We know that whosoever is born of God sinneth not **(continually sins on purpose, isn't bothered by it, and doesn't repent (turn from) of it)**; but he that is begotten of God keepeth himself, and that wicked one toucheth him not." People claim that they were born gay, but all of us were born as sinners. In the same way, people who commit idolatry **(spending their time, thoughts, and effort on something other than following Jesus – For an example of how to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.)** would claim that they were born as idolaters, and they would be correct. So, if you were born gay or born an idolater, you need to get saved. If you truly repented of your sins and trusted Jesus to save you, you would no longer do sexual acts with someone who is of the same gender as you or commit idolatry on purpose without repenting of it. It's possible for women to be attracted to other women, for example, but that doesn't mean they are allowed to commit sexual acts with them.

It says in 1 Corinthians 5:11, "But now I have written unto you not to keep company, if any man that is called a brother **(who says they are a Christian)** be a fornicator **(someone who has sex before they are married)**, or covetous **(someone who wants something that someone else has, which can lead to sin by taking it or carrying a grudge. In general, it's greed (the obsession of accumulating things, such as wealth and material goods, and this is more important to the greedy person than the things of God).)**, or an idolater **(someone who spends their time, thoughts, and effort on something other than following Jesus – For an example of how to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.)**, or a railer **(someone who verbally abuses**

others), or a drunkard, or an extortioner (a person who takes something from someone physically or by an illegal use of power); with such an one no not to eat. (Don't even eat with people like this.)"

If you are a Christian, you shouldn't spend time with people who say they are Christians, but they live a sinful lifestyle (such as 1 Corinthians 5:11 explains). However, you should spend time with them in order to encourage and kindly tell them that they need to stop saying, thinking, and/or doing things that are sinful, because Galatians 6:1 says, "Brethren, if a man be overtaken in a fault, ye which are spiritual, restore such an one in the spirit of meekness; considering thyself, lest thou also be tempted." If they realize they have sinned, they want to quit that sin or other sins, and they want God to forgive them, that is evidence they may be saved (Hebrews 12:8). Although, if these people refuse to quit that sin or other sins, you shouldn't eat with them, go to the mall with them, etc.

We read in Ephesians 5:1–7, "Be ye therefore followers of God, as dear children; And walk in love, as Christ also hath loved us, and hath given himself for us an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweetsmelling savour. But fornication (having sex before marriage), and all uncleanness (committing all types of sexual acts with someone other than the person you are married to), or covetousness (wanting something that someone else has, which can lead to sin by taking it, in this case, someone's spouse or date.), let it not be once named among you, as becometh saints; Neither filthiness (telling dirty stories), nor foolish talking (talking about things that don't make sense/have a purpose or topic. This is different from normal conversations that have topics, such as the weather, sports, dining, automobiles, etc. Foolish talking doesn't help or encourage anyone. Also, clean humor isn't considered foolish talk because Proverbs 17:22 says, "A merry heart doeth good like a medicine: but a broken spirit drieth the bones."), nor jesting (talking perverted/being able to turn a normal conversation or statement into something perverted, and telling dirty jokes), which are not convenient: but rather giving of thanks. For this ye know, that no whoremonger (those who have sexual relations with prostitutes and/or make money by charging people to have sex with prostitutes), nor unclean person (See note for uncleanness.), nor covetous man (See note for covetousness.), who is an idolater (those who spend their time, thoughts, and effort on something other than

**following Jesus – For an example of how to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.**), hath any inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and of God. Let no man deceive you with vain words: for because of these things cometh the wrath of God upon the children of disobedience. Be not ye therefore partakers with them **(If someone is committing these sins, or other sins, kindly leave the area and don't participate.)**."

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are guilty of these sins, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

**If someone claims to be a Christian and continually commits the sins that were just listed (or any other sins) on purpose, and they don't feel sorry and/or try not to do them again, that person is not a Christian. A Christian can and will very likely commit some of these sins repeatedly, but that Christian should feel bad about it and should ask God to forgive them for those sins and try their best, with the Holy Spirit's help, not to do them again.** (If you continually commit sins on purpose, and you aren't bothered and upset because of it (Hebrews 12:5–11), please pray or make a decision again to become a Christian. Please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

Furthermore, in James 2:10 it says, "For whosoever shall keep the whole law, and yet offend in one *point*, he is guilty of all." **If we break one of the Ten Commandments, we have broken them all. This proves that everyone is guilty and needs to be saved, except people who are too young to understand and people who are born with mental conditions that disable them from being able to understand (2 Samuel 12:21-23).**

(Please follow chapter 41 of this book if you have never prayed or made a decision to become a Christian.)

## Chapter 19

### HOW CHRISTIANS SHOULD HANDLE THEIR MONEY

The Bible verses explained in this chapter outline how Christians should use their money:

First Timothy 6:6–11 teaches that you should be satisfied if you have food and clothing and not desire **(If you "want" to be rich so you can buy a lot of things to entertain yourself that do not involve God (Technology items can be used and enjoyed for God's purposes, though, and parts of movies, for example, can be enjoyed in order to glorify God.) and/or keep a bunch of that money for yourself without being willing to supply people's needs that you come across, you are loving money and serving it instead of God - Matthew 6:24)** to be rich. Instead, you should flee from that and pursue righteousness, godliness (fearing (You should love Him so much that you are afraid of disappointing Him by sinning.)), worshiping God, not breaking His commandments, not giving up living the Christian lifestyle because of trials (patience), being able to control yourself by avoiding anger (It's normal to be angry with people who sin against you, though, but dwelling on it for an extended time or retaliating and bearing a grudge is sinful (Ephesians 4:26; Romans 12:19; Leviticus 19:18).), lust (For example, wanting (coveting) another man's wife should be avoided (Matthew 5:27-30), and it also becomes sinful when you plan how and when you will do any form of a sexual act (Ephesians 5:3) with someone you aren't married to (This is evil desire (Colossians 3:5) and impure thoughts (Philippians 4:8).) and carry those acts out (James 1:14-15). When you do these sexual acts, you give in to impurity (1 Thessalonians 4:7, Colossians 3:5) and weren't able to control your body in sanctification and honor (1 Thessalonians 4:3-5). If you aren't able to stop doing sexual acts, you should become married – 1 Corinthians 7:9.), entertainment that doesn't involve God (see chapter 23 of this book), over eating, etc. (temperance); trying to do what God wants you to do as you care for the needs of others, doing what's right - even if it leads to physical, mental, and/or financial suffering and trials; and following Jesus (For an example of how to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.), faith (believing that God will answer your prayers when you ask Him), love (putting people's physical, mental, spiritual, emotional, and financial needs above yours (If it's an expensive need, ask the church that you support or have supported financially with your offerings or other donations to

help with the costs. The apostle Paul took up collections for expensive needs.), and being willing to die in order to protect and help others), patience (not giving up living the Christian lifestyle, no matter how difficult things get), and meekness (showing tenderness, polite and soft manners, calm actions, and not having a bad temper).

(Please follow chapter 10 of this book (if you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc.), but you are not living this way.)

Matthew 6:24 teaches that you cannot "serve" two masters at the same time, because you are either serving God or mammon (money). A test you can give yourself is - Do you spend more of your time, thoughts, and effort "wanting" and "trying" to make good money so you can spend it on things to entertain yourself that do not involve God (Technology items can be used and enjoyed for God's purposes, though and parts of movies, for example, can be enjoyed in order to glorify God.) and/or keep a bunch of that money for yourself without being willing to supply people's needs that you come across and worry if you have enough? Or, do you spend more of your time, thoughts, and effort "wanting" and "trying" to do good works with your money in order to help others, save money for your future, and make money that will meet your family's basic needs (food, clothing, shelter, electric, water, health insurance, etc.)?

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but your honest answer is mainly to earn money so you can buy things that do not involve God in order to entertain yourself and/or keep a bunch of that money for yourself without being willing to supply people's needs that you come across, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

Matthew 6:19–21 says, "Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust doth corrupt, and where thieves break through and steal: But lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and where thieves do not break through nor steal: For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also."

If you get a paycheck, you obviously need to buy food, health insurance, pay taxes every year (based on your income), pay water bills, etc., and save money for the future (Proverbs 21:20; 13:22; 13:11). Other than those type of things, God wants you to be free to give to Him. (If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc.), but you spend more of that money that is left over on things for pleasure and entertainment (Technology items can be used and enjoyed for God's purposes, though, and parts of movies, for example, can be enjoyed in order to glorify God.) that doesn't involve God instead of things for helping others and for the Lord's purposes, your heart belongs to pleasure and entertainment. Also, for example, if you invest money in the stock market and spend a lot of time checking the economy and worrying if it will make money, instead of praying and believing that the money you invested in a charity or church offering, etc. will help people's physical, mental, financial, and spiritual needs, that isn't a good sign. **I guess it's possible for someone to be a Christian and be bothered because they are guilty of these sins and want to change and ask God to forgive them for these sins (Hebrews 12:5–11).** Also, if you lose a lot of money and are depressed for a long time, that isn't a good sign either. It's very important to be satisfied and happy with the things you have (1 Timothy 6:8). Possessions wear out and need replaced, but being consumed with expensive purchases is a disadvantage. When you can say, "The Lord has blessed me with material things to enjoy, and there isn't anything else I need, except to keep paying my bills. Therefore, I am "able and free" to give money to evangelistic organizations, charities, and other things for the Lord's purposes! And it makes me very happy to know that when I do this, I won't only help people who are physically suffering and lead people to Jesus, but I will receive treasures in heaven that are perfect and will never become damaged or need to be replaced (Matthew 6:19-21)!

Similar verses are Matthew 25:14-30 (the Parable of the Talents). Even though this parable applies to the time that you invest in using your abilities to teach the Bible and lead people to the Lord, etc., it is also very important to invest money in places like the stock market and with CD's through banks. You can have the opportunity to double and triple the money that you invested, and that money can be used for God's purposes.

Luke 12:16–21 teaches that the money you have saved should be used to give to those who have needs that you come across in the future. You shouldn't store up a bunch of money for your pleasure and comfort and decide not to use it to help others when a need appears. Similar verses are James 2:15-17 and 1 John 3:17. It isn't a sin to have millions of dollars in the bank, but whenever someone has a need that you come across, you should be ready and willing to give your own money in order to help that need in Jesus' Name and thank God for the opportunity. (If it's an expensive need, ask the church that you support or have supported financially with your offerings or other donations to help with the costs. The apostle Paul took up collections for expensive needs.) If for some reason you lose all your money, you will always have your basic needs provided for if you are saved and obey Matthew 6:33 which says, "But seek ye first the kingdom of God, and his righteousness (what He wants you to do each day); and all these things shall be added unto you." If your plans each day are to follow Jesus (For an example of how to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.), God promises that your basic needs will be met. Therefore, you should trust God's promise in Matthew 6:33 to give you financial security and not the money you have stored in the bank, because it may not always be there.

(Please follow chapter 10 of this book if you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are not living this way.)

If you make a lot of money, you are able to give more money to God's purposes than someone who doesn't make a lot of money (Deuteronomy 16:17, 2 Corinthians 8:12, 1 Corinthians 16:2).

Those who have been blessed with more than basic needs for their family, must unselfishly give to those who have needs they come across. (If it's an expensive need, they should ask the church that they support or have supported financially with their offerings or other donations to help with the costs. The apostle Paul took up collections for expensive needs.) Although, there are plenty of scams floating around, so research and make wise choices with your money. In 1 Timothy

6:17-19 we read, “Charge them that are rich in this world, that they be not highminded, nor trust in uncertain riches, but in the living God, who giveth us richly all things to enjoy; That they do good, that they be rich in good works, ready to distribute, willing to communicate; Laying up in store for themselves a good foundation against the time to come, that they may lay hold on eternal life.”

(If you are wealthy and haven't done this, even though you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

Second Corinthians 9:7 says, “Every man according as he purposeth in his heart, *so let him give*; not grudgingly, or of necessity: for God loveth a cheerful giver.”

Christians are suggested to give offerings from the money they earned to their churches once a week (1 Corinthians 16:2). If a Christian plans on putting twenty dollars in the offering plate, they should do that. However, if someone professes to be a Christian, but they unwillingly put twenty dollars in the offering plate and doesn't enjoy giving that offering, God will not reward them. This is known as free will giving. But, sacrificial giving should occur sometime in a Christian's life. (Just a quick note, a Christian can demonstrate sacrificial giving while putting a certain amount of money in the offering plate; it doesn't have to occur for a special project to be considered sacrificial giving. As you will see, the desire to give is what makes it sacrificial.)

Sacrificial giving occurs whenever a need or cause appears that you feel the Lord wants you to give a certain amount to, you have a strong desire to give that amount, and you give that amount without anyone asking or begging you to give. An example of this was when the Macedonians begged Paul for the opportunity to give to the relief offering Paul was collecting for poor Christians in Judea (2 Corinthians 8:4). Although, the Macedonians were extremely poor. Second Corinthians 8:2 states, “How that in a great trial of affliction the abundance of their joy and their deep poverty abounded unto the riches of their liberality.” This proved that the Macedonians were true Christians, because 2 Corinthians 8:5 says, “And *this they did*, not as we hoped, but first gave their own selves to the Lord, and unto us by the will of God.” A similar instance is recorded in Mark

12:41-44 when a poor widow gave an offering of two mites, and that was all she had to live on. These examples seem to mean that if someone is a Christian, they will give all their money for God's purposes. From reading this chapter, you can see that this isn't true. The Macedonians and the poor widow were in a situation where they felt that the Lord was leading them to give a certain amount, they had a strong desire to give that amount, and they gave that amount without anyone asking or begging them to give. It just so happened that the money they wanted to give was basically all they had. The amount given isn't what is important.

Paul encouraged the Corinthians to have the same kind of willingness to give as the Macedonians. He recognized that the Corinthians had many Christian characteristics, and he listed them in 2 Corinthians 8:7, "Therefore, as ye abound in every *thing*, in faith, and utterance, and knowledge, and in all diligence, and in your love to us, see that ye abound in this grace also **(Paul was referring to giving.)**"

Then in the next verse Paul said, "I speak not by commandment, but by occasion of the forwardness of others, and to prove the sincerity of your love." Paul didn't command them to give, but he was testing the sincerity of their love. If they really loved (were Christians), they would have given like the Macedonians. Paul had to remind the Corinthians that they had promised to give to the relief offering for the poor Christians in Judea a year ago (2 Corinthians 8:10). The Macedonians, on the other hand, begged Paul for the opportunity to give to the relief offering. This doesn't mean that none of the Corinthians were Christians, but God disciplined those who were Christians because they belonged to Him (Hebrews 12:5-11). As a result, they needed to repent of that, and Paul told them how to do that in 2 Corinthians 8:11, "Now therefore perform the doing *of it*; that as *there was* a readiness to will, so *there may be* a performance also out of that which ye have. (They needed to give the money they had promised to give a year ago, and they needed to give it with the same eagerness they had a year ago. This was the kind of eagerness the Macedonians displayed.) Second Corinthians 8:12 explains this more, "For if there be first a willing mind, *it is* accepted according to that a man hath, *and* not according to that he hath not."

If someone professes to be a Christian but never in their life has a desire to give a certain amount of money to people in need or to another one of God's causes or church offerings and gives that amount without anyone asking or begging them, that person may not have been a Christian.

It's a good idea to create an account and continually put money into it each week in keeping with your income, and when someone has a need that you come across, you can take money out of that account and give it (1 Corinthians 16:2). Also, when you get a pay check, the first amount of money that you should set aside should be for church offerings, etc.

Proverbs 28:27, Proverbs 11:24, Psalm 112:9 - It is wise to save money, but if you have made a decision to become a Christian but don't give what you want to give (2 Corinthians 9:7) and/or don't give to those who have needs that you come across that you are able to supply (Luke 12:16–21) or ask the church that you have supported financially to help with expensive needs (The apostle Paul took up collections for expensive needs.), please follow chapter 10 of this book. Giving to charities and church offerings that help the poor are other ways to obey Proverbs 28:27, Proverbs 11:24, and Psalm 112:9.

Mark 10:23–25 warns, "And Jesus looked round about, and saith unto his disciples, How hardly shall they that have riches enter into the kingdom of God! And the disciples were astonished at his words. But Jesus answereth again, and saith unto them, Children, how hard is it for them that trust in riches **(These are people who trust the money they have in the bank to buy what they need and give them financial security when a crises happens, instead of trusting Matthew 6:33 to give them what they need and financial security when a crises happens.)** to enter into the kingdom of God! It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle, than for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of God." **Compared with a great portion of the world, many Americans would be considered rich. It is hard for many rich people to enter heaven, because they usually spend more of their time (other than work or school, etc.), thoughts, and effort toward entertainment, (Technology items can be used and enjoyed for God's purposes, though, and parts of movies, for example, can be enjoyed in order to glorify God.) material things in order to show off and/or don't involve God, and making more money to store up and deciding not to give to those who have needs they come across, instead of following Jesus (living a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book). Also, God knows that we need to make money in order to support ourselves and our families, but it's wrong**

**for people to work extra hours so they will make more money in order to buy bigger and better things, while neglecting to follow Jesus.**

(Please follow chapter 10 of this book if you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are guilty of these things.)

Furthermore, 1 Timothy 5:8 explains, "But if any provide not for his own, and specially for those of his own house, he hath denied the faith, and is worse than an infidel." **(If you claim to be a Christian man and have a family that you live with or don't live with, you should have an income that will provide financial help for them. (If a man doesn't have or can't get a job, their family can hire them to house clean or do lawn work, for example.) If you don't provide for or help your family, you are worse than an unbeliever.)**

(Please follow chapter 10 of this book if you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are guilty of this.)

## Chapter 20

### IS JESUS' LORDSHIP BIBLICAL?

This chapter has portions of the Bible that stress the importance and need for Jesus to be the Lord of your life—where He takes over every area of your life and every moment of each day.

"I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live: yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me" (Galatians 2:20). In 2 Corinthians 5:14–15 it says, "For the love of Christ constraineth us; because we thus judge, that if one died for all, then were all dead: And *that* he died for all, that they which live should not henceforth live unto themselves, but unto him which died for them, and rose again." Romans 12:1 says, "I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that ye present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, *which is* your reasonable service." Romans 14:7-9 declares, "For none of us liveth to himself, and no man dieth to himself. For whether we live, we live unto the Lord; and whether we die, we die unto the Lord: whether we live therefore, or die, we are the Lord's. For to this end Christ both died, and rose, and revived, that he might be Lord both of the dead and living." In 1 Corinthians 15:31, Paul proclaims, "I protest by your rejoicing which I have in Christ Jesus our Lord, I die daily." And we read in Colossians 3:1–4, "If ye then be risen with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God. Set your affection on things above, not on things on the earth. For ye are dead, and your life is hid with Christ in God. When Christ, *who is* our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory."

If you have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, your old life and plans for each day should continue to die, and Christ should take over. It resembles you dying and Jesus' Spirit coming into your lifeless body, raising your physical body off the ground, and living His life the way He wants (as a slave to God) in your flesh and bones. After realizing these things, you should say, "Alright, out of thankfulness I will try to follow Jesus (explained in chapter 39 of this book), because that is the true meaning of why I was created."

The true meaning of life is not to spend a bunch of money for yourself, be popular, and comfortable doing what you want that doesn't involve God. It is actually the opposite! Large numbers of people don't realize this. You might find it strange that most of the things people are focused on and go after are things that Jesus wants us to "give up". Jesus wants you to trade your old life for His life - Chapter 39 of this book gives an example of what this lifestyle looks like.

(If you have never prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, **and you are willing to begin living a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book after you pray or make a decision to become a Christian, please follow chapter 41 of this book.**)

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you haven't been living the way chapter 39 of this book explains, please follow chapter 10 of this book.)

Jesus said in John 12:24–26, "Verily, verily, I say unto you, Except a corn of wheat fall into the ground and die, it abideth alone: but if it die, it bringeth forth much fruit (**This could refer to Jesus' death on the cross, but the following sentence can also be taken in context with the rest of this passage: If you don't die out to and leave your old lifestyle behind, you won't be able to bear good fruit after you pray or make a decision to become a Christian – which is the result of someone who is saved.**). He that loveth his life shall lose it; and he that hateth his life in this world (**This describes a Christian who gives up every area of their life and every moment and lets Jesus take over every area of their life and every moment after they accept Him as their Savior. This kind of lifestyle is explained in chapter 39 of this book.**) shall keep it unto life eternal (**will go to heaven**). If any man serve me, let him follow me (**As mentioned before, someone needs to be willing to begin following Jesus after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian, and from reading this verse, "serving" (feeding, clothing, giving financial help, and finding shelter for the less fortunate; telling people how to get saved, visiting people in hospitals and jails, and doing acts of kindness, etc.) Jesus is a major part of "following" Jesus.**); and where I am, there shall also my servant be: if any man serve me, him will *my* Father honour."

(If you have never prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, **and you are willing to begin following Jesus after you pray or make a decision to become a Christian, please follow chapter 41 of this book.**)

(Please follow chapter 10 of this book if you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are not living this way.)

There are only two choices each day—please God or please yourself. First John 4:6 says, "We are of God: he that knoweth God heareth us; he that is not of God heareth not us. Hereby know we the spirit of truth, and the spirit of error." If God is not involved in what you are watching and listening to (See chapter 23 of this book.), saying, or doing, it is sinful. A way to avoid this is to ask yourself, "Is what I'm doing right now make me think of God, will it cause me to have sinful thoughts or actions, will it cause me to love or enjoy something or someone more than doing and thinking about the type of things explained in chapter 39 of this book, keep me from spending time living the way chapter 39 of this book explains, take away my desire to learn about God's Word and try to live the way it says to live, cause me not to want to spend time encouraging and giving helpful advice to others, or take away my desire to worship God with other Christians?"

(Please follow chapter 10 of this book if you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are not living this way.)

Before this chapter ends, how could we overlook Luke 6:46 which says, "And why call ye me, Lord, Lord, and do not the things which I say?" Yes, Jesus should be the Lord of your life, and a major part of what that involves is doing the things He said to do, and these things are recorded in the Bible. The best advice is to literally open the Bible and say, **"I am going to do what the Bible says to do and don't do what it says not to do."** Also, you need to be willing to say and **do what the Holy Spirit urges and gives you thoughts to say and do each day.**

(Please follow chapter 10 of this book if you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you haven't been obeying the Bible.)

(If you have never prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, **and you are willing to allow Jesus to become the Lord of your life after you pray or make a decision to become a Christian, please follow chapter 41 of this book.**)

For details about Jesus' Lordship and it's relation to preparing someone's heart to receive Jesus as their Savior, please see chapters 1 and 5, among others.

## Chapter 21

### THE DEFINING MARKS OF A CHRISTIAN

In 1 Corinthians 6:19–20 we read, "What? know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost *which is* in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own? For ye are bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God's." As soon as your heart is prepared to receive Jesus (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of this book), and you tell God that you believe Jesus died on the cross to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believe He arose from the dead, you are bought, and God takes over every area of your life and every moment of each day from that moment on. Your job and purpose for living "from that moment on" is to follow Jesus (live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book).

(Please follow chapter 10 of this book if you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are not living this way.)

It says in 1 Corinthians 9:24–27, "Know ye not that they which run in a race run all, but one receiveth the prize? So run, that ye may obtain. And every man that striveth for the mastery is temperate in all things. Now they *do it* to obtain a corruptible crown; but we an incorruptible. I therefore so run, not as uncertainly; so fight I, not as one that beateth the air: But I keep under my body, and bring *it* into subjection: lest that by any means, when I have preached to others, I myself should be a castaway."

The apostle Paul described very well how you should live the Christian lifestyle. Just like a runner in a race tries their best to win first place, you should try your best to follow Jesus (live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book).

(If you have never prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, **and you are willing to begin living the way that was just explained after you pray or make a decision to become a Christian, please follow chapter 41 of this book.**)

(Please follow chapter 10 of this book if you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are not living this way.)

Since God owns you, the new purpose of your life is to imitate Jesus (display His character traits and do good works). These two things will grab unbelievers' attention, and they will want to become Christians too. This is how God chose to draw people into the kingdom of heaven. This is why God leaves you on earth after you become a Christian, instead of taking you immediately to heaven. You stay here because you have a job to do! You are an employee of God Himself! So, the following is your job description:

First Peter 2:9 says, "But ye *are* a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light." In other words, you are saved so you can show the praises (**character traits**) of Jesus. As a result, this will make God look good/cause people to think good about God, and people will want to become Christians.

These character traits are listed in 2 Peter 1:3–11, "According as his divine power hath given unto us all things that *pertain* unto life and godliness, through the knowledge of him that hath called us to glory and virtue: Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be partakers of the divine nature (**have Jesus' character traits**), having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust. And beside this, giving all diligence (**Try your best to understand what these character traits mean, then try your best, with God's help, to "do" what these character traits mean.**) add (**Each time you develop a character trait, you will be able to develop the next character trait listed.**) to your faith virtue (**You should fulfill your purpose in life by making God look good in front of others by following Jesus (living a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book), which will make people think good about God and make them interested in becoming Christians. You should live a pure life and not continually sin on purpose like non-believers. Your thoughts, speech, and the way you spend your time should be different (see chapter 39 of this book); and to virtue knowledge (You should study the Bible and be taught the Bible, and as a result, you will learn what sinful things to avoid and how to follow Jesus.)**); And to

knowledge temperance (You should be able to control yourself. Anger (It's normal to be angry with people who sin against you, though, but dwelling on it for an extended time or retaliating and bearing a grudge is sinful (Ephesians 4:26; Romans 12:19; Leviticus 19:18).), lust (For example, wanting (coveting) another man's wife should be avoided (Matthew 5:27-30), and it also becomes sinful when you plan how and when you will do any form of a sexual act (Ephesians 5:3) with someone you aren't married to (This is evil desire (Colossians 3:5) and impure thoughts (Philippians 4:8).) and carry those acts out (James 1:14-15). When you do these sexual acts, you give in to impurity (1 Thessalonians 4:7, Colossians 3:5) and weren't able to control your body in sanctification and honor (1 Thessalonians 4:3-5). If you aren't able to stop doing sexual acts, you should become married – 1 Corinthians 7:9.), entertainment that doesn't involve God (see chapter 23 of this book), or over eating, etc. should definitely be avoided. Instead of things like these taking over your time, thoughts, and energy, you should spend your time, thoughts, and energy following Jesus (living a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book).); and to temperance patience (You should have the ability to not give up following Jesus when things in life and people are difficult. You also shouldn't get back at people who did you wrong. Patience is also seen in every day examples like not getting mad or flustered while waiting on someone.); and to patience godliness (You should display temperance, patience, try to do what God wants you to do as you care for the needs of others, fear (You should love God so much that you are afraid of disappointing Him by sinning.), worship God, not break His commandments, do the right things - even if it leads to physical, mental, and financial suffering and trials; and follow Jesus (live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book).); And to godliness brotherly kindness (If you come across someone with a physical, financial (If it's an expensive need, ask the church that you support or have supported financially with your offerings or other donations to help with the costs. The apostle Paul took up collections for expensive needs.), emotional, mental, or spiritual need, you should do what you can to help meet those needs. This also means that you will look for ways to do good things for people who treated you wrong.); and to brotherly kindness charity (You should gladly give (if there's a logical reason to do so) to someone and not expect for that person to pay you back or return what you allowed them to borrow. This also means that you should put people's needs that you come across (mental, physical, emotional, spiritual, and financial) above your needs, and

**be willing to die in order to protect or help someone who is different from you or even your enemy. Charity is the next level of brotherly kindness. With brotherly kindness, you begin to enjoy people, and this leads to deep love for people (charity).** For if these things be in you, and abound, they make *you that ye shall* neither *be* barren nor unfruitful in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ. But he that lacketh these things is blind, and cannot see afar off, and hath forgotten that he was purged from his old sins. Wherefore the rather, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if ye do these things, ye shall never fall: For so an entrance shall be ministered unto you abundantly into the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.”

**If you work hard to develop these character traits, with the help God has promised to provide, you will gradually become more and more "conformed to the image of His Son" (Romans 8:29; 2 Corinthians 3:18). If you try really hard to have these character traits and are able to produce these character traits more and more over time, you will have a way to have assurance of your salvation (2 Peter 1:8–11).**

(Please follow chapter 10 of this book if you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are not living this way.)

In Galatians 5:22-23 the apostle Paul listed similar character traits that Jesus had, "But the fruit of the Spirit is love **(You should put people's needs that you come across (mental, physical, emotional, spiritual, and financial) above your needs, and be willing to die in order to protect or help someone who is different from you or even your enemy).** joy **(You should have a sense of happiness all the time because you know you are going to heaven. You should even be happy when horrible things happen to you because you know life is temporary, and heaven is perfect and lasts forever. John 15:10-11 adds that Christians remain in Jesus' love when they obey His commandments, and this brings joy).** peace **(You should have a relaxing confidence that you are going to heaven, even if you're going through horrible trials (problems with your friends, family, job, church, mental and physical health, and financial problems etc. Things could get so bad, that it would seem as though God has abandoned you, but you should be confident that you still belong to God and are going to heaven).**

longsuffering (You should have the ability to not give up following Jesus (living a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book) when things in life and people are difficult. Longsuffering is also seen in every day examples like not getting mad or flustered while waiting on someone because you are ready to leave.), gentleness (You should show tenderness, polite and soft manners, calm actions, and not have a bad temper.), goodness (You should avoid sinning, and help people who have problems that you come across.), faith (People should “depend” on you. For example, people should depend on you to come to church regularly, help those in need, pray for others, and do other things to help others regularly.), Meekness (You should be able to avoid sinning when people say and do mean things to you. Instead, you should ask God to bless them and not have a desire to retaliate. Your old nature may have been rude to the person who was rude to you, but now that you are meek, that doesn't happen as much. You shouldn't worry about retaliating because Job 13:5 says, "O that ye would altogether hold your peace! and it should be your wisdom." God will take up for you and fight your battles for you. This also means being able to be teachable.), temperance (You should be able to control yourself. You shouldn't let anger (It's normal to be angry with people who sin against you, though, but dwelling on it for an extended time or retaliating and bearing a grudge is sinful (Ephesians 4:26; Romans 12:19; Leviticus 19:18).), lust (For example, wanting (coveting) another man's wife should be avoided (Matthew 5:27-30), and it also becomes sinful when you plan how and when you will do any form of a sexual act (Ephesians 5:3) with someone you aren't married to (This is evil desire (Colossians 3:5) and impure thoughts (Philippians 4:8).) and carry those acts out (James 1:14-15). When you do these sexual acts, you give in to impurity (1 Thessalonians 4:7, Colossians 3:5) and weren't able to control your body in sanctification and honor (1 Thessalonians 4:3-5). If you aren't able to stop doing sexual acts, you should become married – 1 Corinthians 7:9.), entertainment that doesn't involve God (see chapter 23 of this book), or over eating, etc. be part of your life. Instead of things like these taking over your time, thoughts, energy, and desires, you should be able to spend your time, thoughts, energy, and desires (Colossians 2:11) following Jesus (living a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book).): against such there is no law."

(Please follow chapter 10 of this book if you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are not living this way.)

**The more your character and behavior becomes like the Lord's was, the more you can be used to carry out your next purpose for living, and that is doing good works for others and in front of others so they will think and say good things about God and want to become Christians or draw closer to God if they have already been saved.**

If you're really a Christian, you should spend your life doing good works (with the exception of people who don't live long after they get saved or aren't physically and/or mentally able due to bad health). These are things you do for others that have a positive impact on their lives. (These are things such as: giving money to those who have needs (Luke 12:16-21), teaching the Bible (Matthew 28:19), counseling with people who are having problems (Galatians 6:2), encouraging others (Hebrews 10:25), correcting believers when they sin (Galatians 6:1), and telling people how to become Christians (2 Timothy 4:5) by mouth, through email or social media, and/or by handing out or dropping off tracts that explain how to become a Christian in places like stores or restaurants where people can pick them up; feeding, clothing, and finding shelter for the less fortunate, and visiting people in hospitals and jails (Matthew 25:35-36; Mark 12:30-31; Titus 3:14); doing acts of kindness for people that will cause them to think good about God (for example - cooking, cleaning, doing yard work, helping shop, washing cars, fixing appliances) (Matthew 5:16; Titus 3:14).) James 2:26 explains, "For as the body without the spirit is dead, so faith without works is dead also." Belief in Jesus is necessary for you to become a Christian, but if you never do good works as a result, you aren't really saved (with the exception of people who don't live long after they get saved, or they aren't physically and/or mentally able due to bad health).

It says in Titus 1:16, "They profess that they know God; but in works they deny *him*, being abominable, and disobedient, and unto every good work reprobate." If you claim to be a Christian but never do good works as a result, you are reprobate (hypocrite – pretending to believe). Matthew 5:16 says, "Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father which is in heaven." Your good works cause people to marvel at the goodness of God and the change, peace, and real purpose for being alive that He has developed in your life, so much

that they will long for a relationship with His Son, who made all these things possible. We read in Ephesians 2:10, "For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them." In other words, you are saved so you can do good things to help the people that God planned for you to help before you were born. First Thessalonians 1:9 says, "For they themselves shew of us what manner of entering in we had unto you, and how ye turned to God from idols to serve the living and true God." If you have been saved, over time you will turn to God and won't be devoted to idols (things that take your time and thoughts away from the things of God), so you can serve the living and true God. John 15:16 reveals, "Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you, that ye should go and bring forth fruit, and *that* your fruit should remain: that whatsoever ye shall ask of the Father in my name, he may give it you." The reason Jesus saves people is so they may bear good fruit, and good works are definitely good fruit (Colossians 1:10).

(Please follow chapter 10 of this book if you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are not living this way.)

Titus 2:14 proclaims, "Who gave himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity, and purify unto himself a peculiar people, zealous of good works." Jesus died for your sins so He could rescue you from them, and as a result, you would be free and able to do good things for people that would cause them to praise and think good about God and draw many into the kingdom of heaven. If Jesus came into your heart and saved you, He will give you "new" desires like His (Colossians 2:11).

(Please follow chapter 10 of this book if you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are not living this way.)

When Jesus was on earth, He spent His time telling people how they could enter the kingdom of heaven and took care of people's physical needs (good works). John 21:25 says, "And there are also many other things which Jesus did, the which, if they should be written every one, I suppose that even the world itself could not contain the books that should be written. Amen." You

should seek to follow Jesus' example, and this is known as sanctification (the result of someone who has accepted God's free gift of eternal life). You aren't able to carry out John 21:25, but you can still model Jesus' example of witnessing to and helping others, and when you aren't doing that, keeping your mind on the things of God. Whenever you aren't able to witness to and help people at different places, you can still witness to people at home through different websites. (There are websites where you can have a message on top of your profile encouraging people to read [www.areyousureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areyousureyouaresaved.com) and get it out to their church, other churches, and other people. Websites like dating sites allow you to click thousands of profiles, and they can be notified that you viewed their profile by clicking the "viewed me" button. After that, a new screen appears, and they can click your user name. Then, your profile page should appear, and they can see where you posted on the top of your profile encouraging people to read [www.areyousureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areyousureyouaresaved.com) and get it out to their church, other churches, and other people. As a result, thousands more can read it, and many can be saved. You can also encourage them to put the same message on their profile. The cycle can keep repeating.) First John 2:6 says, "He that saith he abideth in him ought himself also so to walk, even as he walked." (There are more comments on this verse in the second paragraph of the next chapter of this book.) Walk even as He walked means to follow Jesus (For an example of how to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.), and this is known as sanctification. If there is no sanctification over time, justification (becoming saved by accepting God's free gift of eternal life) didn't truly happen. The reason this happens is explained in chapter 16 of this book - The Parable of the Sower. (Please follow chapter 10 of this book if you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are not living this way.)

There are other very important ways that you can live for Christ. You can do things like help people with storm damage get things in order, provide financial help and homeless shelters, help those who have trouble understanding the Bible, find protective shelter for those who are violently and sexually abused, ask God to help you come up with ways to bring peace where there is war within families, friends, or even countries; be patient with and help those with mental damage understand things, try to bring peace where there is racial problems (Tell those who are

having racial problems, “We all have a mind, heart, and soul but just different skin colors. We are all related because Adam and Eve were the first man and woman, and everyone came from them.), provide financial help, prayers, and advice for ways people with diseases can get medical help; and provide financial help and food for those who were affected by a famine. If the Lord doesn't lead you to help these problems on your own, you can donate money to organizations like the Red Cross, who helps with disaster relief and Unicef, who feeds the hungry.

If you have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but it didn't have the right result, realize that you need to be willing to be Jesus' slave and battle the flesh (wanting to or actually spending your time doing and thinking about things that don't involve God) for possibly 100 years. Although, this challenge will one day end, and you will have no more struggles and be in perfect peace in heaven. Jesus made you His first priority and gave you everything, so you should give Him everything. When you really make a sacrifice and do something that you're not used to doing to go out of your way, you're hesitant for a second, but then realize that you are doing a significant good work that will have eternal benefits. You're proving that you're saved, and you're pleasing the Creator and Sustainer of the universe! Just take a deep breath and breathe in those thoughts, and you will receive much joy when you give somebody money or give up your time to visit with or help somebody.

Possibly, the thing that holds many back from really beginning to follow Jesus is being afraid of accepting the challenge to begin living a different lifestyle after they pray or make decisions to become Christians. This type of living is very necessary. Luke 14:25–35 reveals, "And there went great multitudes with him: and he turned, and said unto them, If any *man* come to me, and hate not his father, and mother, and wife, and children, and brethren, and sisters, yea, and his own life also, he cannot be my disciple. And whosoever doth not bear his cross, and come after me, cannot be my disciple. For which of you, intending to build a tower, sitteth not down first, and counteth the cost, whether he have *sufficient* to finish *it*? Lest haply, after he hath laid the foundation, and is not able to finish *it*, all that behold *it* begin to mock him, Saying, This man began to build, and was not able to finish. Or what king, going to make war against another king, sitteth not down first, and consulteth whether he be able with ten thousand to meet him that cometh

against him with twenty thousand? Or else, while the other is yet a great way off, he sendeth an ambassage, and desireth conditions of peace. So likewise, whosoever he be of you that forsaketh not all that he hath, he cannot be my disciple. Salt *is* good: but if the salt have lost his savour, wherewith shall it be seasoned? It is neither fit for the land, nor yet for the dunghill; *but* men cast it out. He that hath ears to hear, let him hear."

If you aren't willing to put your best efforts into following Jesus, your efforts will be useless to Jesus—it would even ruin a dung hill. If your plans are to believe in Jesus so you will go to heaven, but you aren't willing to follow Him for the rest of your life (live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book), you are wasting your time. A similar section is taught in Revelation 3:15–22, which means if you are lukewarm (halfhearted and not fully giving Jesus your best), Jesus will spew you out of His mouth. In other words, when people don't put 100% into following Jesus, it makes Him sick to His stomach. I promise you, this is not a good position to be in. Revelation 3:19 means if you are bothered and upset because you haven't been putting your best effort into imitating Jesus, that means Jesus is rebuking and chastising you because He loves you, and you may belong to Him and may be saved (See chapter 10 of this book for more information.). You just need to repent of this sin (Ask God to forgive you for being lukewarm, and “from that moment on” try your best to follow Jesus (live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book)), but if you aren't bothered and upset because you are lukewarm and aren't willing to follow Jesus “from this moment on”, you don't really belong to Him. You need to be willing to begin following Jesus after you pray or make a decision to become a Christian. Luke 14:25–35 is directed at people who are thinking about getting saved, and Revelation 3:15–22 is directed at people who have already prayed or made decisions to become Christians. They either need to repent because they haven't put their best efforts into following Jesus, or they need to pray or make decisions again to become Christians if they aren't bothered by the fact that they have been halfhearted in living the Christian lifestyle.

A good way to know that you aren't lukewarm is if when you aren't helping or witnessing to someone, you try to think about the things of God (See chapter 39 of this book for an example of what this looks like). Hebrews 12:28–29 says, "Wherefore we receiving a kingdom which cannot be moved, let us have grace, whereby we may serve God acceptably with reverence and godly fear: For our God *is* a consuming fire." God doesn't just want an hour of your time each day

and then the rest for yourself; He wants all of it, because He is a jealous God (Exodus 34:14) and deserves your full attention.

(Please follow chapter 10 of this book if you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are not living this way.)

Do this every day to know that you are not living a half-hearted Christian lifestyle: Wake up each morning and literally remind yourself that the purpose of the day is to "give up" your old thoughts and plans that do not involve God, and spend your time following Jesus (living a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book). This is the true meaning of life and why you were created!

## Chapter 22

### ALL ABOUT JESUS

This is very important! God wants you to follow Jesus' example. Philippians 2:5-11 instructs, "Let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus: Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God: But made himself of no reputation, and took upon him the form of a servant, and was made in the likeness of men: And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross. Wherefore God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name: That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of *things* in heaven, and *things* in earth, and *things* under the earth; And *that* every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ *is* Lord, to the glory of God the Father." God owned every area of Jesus' life. Jesus began each day by "giving up" what His human nature wanted to do and was completely free to be used by God in whatever way He wanted.

In John 6:38 Jesus said, "For I came down from heaven, not to do mine own will, but the will of him that sent me." Jesus' purpose in coming to earth was to do His Father's will (what God wanted Him to spend His time doing). Philippians 2:5-8 means that Jesus became nothing but a slave, and His life revolved around doing what God wanted Him to do 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. In John 17:4 Jesus said, "I have glorified thee on the earth (did things for others and in front of others in order to make God look good/cause them to think and say good things about God): I have finished the work which thou gavest me to do." Our work for the Lord is never finished, but at the end of our lives, this is what we should be able to say to God. First John 2:6 declares, "He that saith he abideth in him ought himself also so to walk, even as he walked." From reading this verse and John 17:4, it seems that if someone is a Christian, they will do the same things Jesus did while He was on earth, but that isn't the case. God has a list of good works that He wants every individual Christian to do (Ephesians 2:10), and the Holy Spirit urges and gives them thoughts to do those things. God has a different list for each Christian. Luke 8:26-39 reveals this. In this story, Legion wanted to literally walk as Jesus walked (1 John 2:6), in the same way Jesus' close disciples did, but Jesus wanted him to return to his home and tell how much God had done for him (Luke 8:39). God had planned for Legion to witness to the people who saw him in the horrible condition

he used to be in, so God would be glorified and people would want to become Christians. Therefore, this proves that God hasn't planned for everyone to go town to town in order to preach and teach like Jesus did.

Although God has not planned for everyone to go town to town in order to preach and teach like Jesus did, Jesus' lifestyle gave the perfect example of how Christians should live. (Before I describe this, you may not be motivated to live this way, so please see chapter 40 of this book beforehand.)

Jesus' mind was always on the things of God. Other than thinking, Jesus depended on God to tell Him every word to say and miracle to perform. When God gave Him the thought to preach to the multitudes, Jesus did that. When God gave Him the thought to heal a blind person, Jesus did that. When God gave Him the thought to go out of His way and go through Samaria, Jesus obeyed. In the same way that Jesus depended on God to tell Him every move to make, you should depend on the Holy Spirit to give you a thought to do something, and then do it.

It doesn't matter if you are brushing your teeth or mowing the lawn, you are always thinking. So, no matter where you are, you should try to "Pray without ceasing" (1 Thessalonians 5:17) and think about what you studied in the Bible (Psalm 119:15-16). When you aren't praying, thinking about how you can live the way the Bible says to live, or thinking about things such as a miracle you witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness you saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because God gifted them with that ability, or imagining what will be going on in heaven when you get there, etc. (Philippians 4:8), your main plans of each day should be to do the remaining type of things in the long list of chapter 39 of this book. You should constantly be in an attitude of prayer and thinking about the things of God, and when the Holy Spirit gives you the thought to study the Bible, you should do that. When He gives you the thought to do something to help somebody, you should do that. When He gives you the thought to tell someone how to become a Christian, you should try to do that. This is how to live each moment of the day for Jesus and know you are on the narrow path (Matthew 7:13-14). This is also how you lose your life for His sake (Luke 9:24) and how you abide in Jesus (1 John 2:6).

(If you have never prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, **and you are willing to begin living the way that was just explained after you pray or make a decision to become a Christian, please follow chapter 41 of this book.**)

(Please follow chapter 10 of this book if you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are not living this way.)

Jesus wants to take over every moment of each day, so let's break this down and see what this will look like. A lot of times people are in situations and don't know what God wants them to do. So, the following is what a normal day would look like and the kind of things the Holy Spirit will give you thoughts to do throughout the day:

While you are at home, ask yourself, "What kind of things would God want me to do?" He would want you to do things such as read His Word, think about His Word, pray, talk about Him and His Word, try to get along with those you are living with, and minister to people on the telephone or internet by telling them how much Jesus has done in your life, tell them how to become Christians, encourage those who are down, make prayer requests, and talk about the goodness of God, etc.

While you are driving, ask yourself, "What kind of things would God want me to do?" He would want you to do things such as carry on the conversation you was just having with Him, think about what you have read in the Bible, pray for a safe trip, pray that everyone on the road will have a safe trip, thank Him for your transportation and whatever the road conditions are, talk about Him and His Word with those you are riding with, listen to Christian music, be a safe and courteous driver, and don't speed (see Romans 13:1-7).

While you are at school or work, ask yourself, "What kind of things would God want me to do?" Colossians 3:23-24 informs, " And whatsoever ye do, do *it* heartily, as to the Lord, and not unto men; Knowing that of the Lord ye shall receive the reward of the inheritance: for ye serve the Lord Christ." Do your job or school work like you are working for the Lord, and tell God that you are doing it for the Lord Jesus and are thankful for the opportunity (Colossians 3:17). You'll be a much better employee or student, and you will be obeying the Lord. Also, don't cheat in school or do dishonest things while at work, strive to get along with all your classmates and coworkers, tell them how to become Christians (see chapters 26-33 of this book), council with those who are having problems, and let them see Christ living through you.

When you answer the door or telephone, do it in a loving manner, and be a good witness for Christ. When you do such things as eat, drink, get dressed, brush your teeth, exercise, take a shower, play golf, clean your home, or even take out the trash, do all to the glory of God (While you are doing these type of things, try to think about things such as what you have read in the Bible, pray, or think about things such as a miracle you witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness you saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because God gifted them with that ability, or imagine what will be going on in heaven when you get there, etc. (Philippians 4:8)). First Corinthians 10:31 says, "Whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God." Try to make everything you do be an act of worship, because God is interested with every area of your life.

When you are at the store or mall, you can do such things as look for opportunities to do acts of kindness (Matthew 5:16; Titus 3:14) and tell others how to become Christians. Chapters 26-33 of this book have advice and outlines that will help you witness in different situations.

## Chapter 23

### TV AND MUSIC

There's no getting around it; there is content in video games, TV shows, movies, and lyrics in music that Christians shouldn't enjoy.

TV networks like Christian networks with preaching and singing and TV shows that show different parts of the world's natural beauties that Jesus created (John 1:1-4) are things a Christian could watch.

Also, I feel that a Christian could watch sports, if the reason they watch is to enjoy God and thank and appreciate Him for gifting the athletes with such amazing abilities (Philippians 4:8). Although, there are certain sports that are violent, and if the reason someone watches these violent sports is to enjoy seeing someone be physically injured, then that is wrong (Romans 1:30-31). All sports have competition, and rivalries usually develop as a result. When a fan of one team hates another team, is jealous of them, and hopes they have a horrible season, that is also wrong.

To switch topics, there are segments in TV shows and movies and lyrics in music that Christians shouldn't enjoy (for example, something that glorifies getting drunk, drugs, revenge, murder, sex before marriage, boldly doing what they want instead of what God wants, perverted talk, and bragging). They shouldn't enjoy when someone does, says, or sings about such things, because they are as guilty as the person doing, saying, or singing about it (Romans 1:32). For a list of many sins, see chapters 18 and 35 of this book.

Even though there's sinful content in just about every movie and TV show, it isn't necessary to permanently pull the plug on your TV. Watching movies and TV shows themed around good versus evil, which is evident in the Bible, is a way to not rejoice about injustice but rejoice whenever the truth wins (1 Corinthians 13:6).

This is also very important - While you are watching something that God would approve, you can try to think about things such as what you read in the Bible (Psalm 119:15), pray (Matthew 6:9-13), think about things such as a miracle you witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness you saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because God gifted

them with that ability, or imagine what will be going on in heaven when you get there, etc. (Philippians 4:8). Also, while you are watching something that God would approve, you can use the internet in order to tell people how to become Christians, encourage others, or give advice to people who are going through trials, etc.

If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you enjoy watching and/or listening to sinful things, ask God to forgive you. Then, "from this moment on", try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) to change, with God helping you change. Continue to follow this pattern every time you fail in this way. (Please follow chapter 10 of this book for more information.)

## Chapter 24

### HOW TO COUNCIL WITH OTHERS

There probably will be many times that you try to help people with their problems, and they say something like, “There is no hope for the kind of situation I’m in.” So, go over this outline with them, and print it or email it to them so they can review it when they need help -

No matter what your past or current problems are, you can be forgiven. (The first part of Matthew 12:31 says, “Wherefore I say unto you, All manner of sin and blasphemy shall be forgiven unto men:”) God’s purpose for your life is for you to become more and more conformed to the image of His Son (Romans 8:29; 2 Corinthians 3:18). God won’t allow any sin that you have thought, said, or done stop you from trusting the blood that Jesus shed on the cross to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believing He arose from the dead. You might have thought, said, or committed every sin imaginable, but if you have a broken and contrite heart (This means you are very sorry for saying, thinking, and/or doing it.), you can be forgiven (Psalm 51:17). God will not forgive someone if they “never in their life” feel sorry for their sins; this is what the second part of Matthew 12:31 means, “but the blasphemy *against* the *Holy* Ghost shall not be forgiven unto men.” Matthew 12:22-32 records this event. Jesus had been preaching and performing miracles for two years when this event occurred, and the Pharisees who committed the unpardonable sin (which means this sin can’t be forgiven) had to have heard many of Jesus’ messages and seen many of His miracles. This evidence clearly proved that Jesus was the Son of God and the Savior of the world. The Holy Ghost is the third person in the Trinity, which represents God in three ways – God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Ghost. One of the Holy Ghost’s purposes is to urge people to repent and accept Jesus as their Savior so they can go to heaven when they leave this world. For two years, the Holy Ghost proved to the Pharisees who committed the unpardonable sin that Jesus was the Son of God and the Savior of the world, but they repeatedly refused to believe that. Every time someone is urged by the Holy Ghost to get saved, and they decide not to do that, their heart can become harder. Tragically, someone can keep putting off that decision, and their heart can become so hard that they are unable to get saved (This is explained in Proverbs 29:1). This is exactly what happened to the Pharisees. After two years, there wasn’t any more evidence the Pharisees needed to realize that Jesus was the Son of God and

the Savior of the world. They proved there was no hope for them to be saved when they concluded that Jesus got his power to cast the demon out of the man from Satan, and they never changed their mind, they wasn't sorry, or they never asked God to forgive them for thinking and saying that. This is the definition of the sin that can't be forgiven (the unpardonable sin).

The past doesn't matter (Philippians 3:13-14), and the only thing that is important is to know that you are going to heaven when you leave this world. This outline will tell you how to be sure of this: <http://chriswaug5.wix.com/howtogoheaven> (Explain and/or email or print and give them this website.) If you have already prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, please read and keep this website: <http://chriswaug5.wix.com/makingsure>

Once you know you are going to heaven, every other problem will seem very small. Although, the choices you make in certain situations give you evidence that let you know if you have had the right kind of changes in your lifestyle that a Christian should have –

If you have committed a crime such as stealing, return what you stole or ask someone in authority, such as the police, if you don't know what to do.

If you have cheated in school and/or done dishonest things at work or in paying your bills, notify someone in charge in order to know if there will be any penalties.

If you have cheated someone out of their money or other things, return those things.

If you are dating someone, and they refuse to become a Christian, you need to end that dating relationship (2 Corinthians 6:14-18). The same concept should be applied to friends that you spend a lot of time with who refuse to become Christians (2 Corinthians 6:14-18). You should spend time with them in order to tell them how to become Christians (see chapters 26-33 of this book) and let them see the changes Jesus has made in your life, but you shouldn't take part in the sinful things they do. Also, if you are engaged or planning to be engaged, you need to cancel your marriage

plans if the person you are engaged to refuses to become a Christian (2 Corinthians 6:14-18). Also, the same concept can be applied to a man and woman who live together but are not married. If both of you are Christians, get married as soon as possible. If you are not ready to get married, do whatever it takes to stop lusting (For example, wanting (coveting) another man's wife should be avoided (Matthew 5:27-30), and it also becomes sinful when you plan how and when you will do any form of a sexual act (Ephesians 5:3) with someone you aren't married to (This is evil desire (Colossians 3:5) and impure thoughts (Philippians 4:8).) and carry those acts out (James 1:14-15). When you do these sexual acts, you give in to impurity (1 Thessalonians 4:7; Colossians 3:5) and aren't able to control your body in sanctification and honor (1 Thessalonians 4:3-5). If you aren't able to stop doing sexual acts, you should become married (1 Corinthians 7:9).)

If you are married and your spouse is living, you shouldn't divorce and marry someone else (Mark 10:11-12), and you can only get a divorce if he or she commits adultery (Matthew 5:32) (Forgiveness is a must, even if divorce happens; bitterness and hatred shouldn't happen. On the other hand, divorce doesn't have to happen at all.) or leaves you because he or she has abandoned the Christian faith or refuses the Christian faith (1 Corinthians 7:15). The Bible does allow someone to separate from their spouse if they are being abused or threatened, but they shouldn't get divorced or seek another relationship (Mark 10:11-12, Matthew 5:32, 1 Corinthians 7:15). Luke 16:18 adds that someone who has been divorced, shouldn't remarry, except for the reasons covered in Matthew 5:32 and 1 Corinthians 7:15. Also, a man shouldn't marry a woman who has been divorced (Matthew 5:32), except for the reasons covered in Matthew 5:32 and 1 Corinthians 7:15.)

If you are planning to have an abortion, cancel the abortion (Exodus 20:13).

If you are planning to get revenge, don't do it (Matthew 5:38-48).

If you are unable to stop disagreeing with and being angry with someone or many people in your thoughts, you need to become a Christian and trust the Holy Spirit's renewing power to change your mind. If you are having these problems, and you have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, this is a perfect opportunity for you to please God by obeying the Bible and trying to imitate the Lord Jesus Christ (your hero and the One who died so you can live in heaven for eternity) by being happy and thankful to God when your enemy or anyone else is rude and mistreats you (1 Thessalonians 5:16-18). The devil wants you to get angry and think bad thoughts about them, but that would be an opportunity to defeat him and glorify God. Also, you will have one way to have assurance of your salvation if you live this way (Matthew 5:45), and since these people are giving you these opportunities, you can develop a major love for them and pray for them. God is using these people to make you stronger. Believe me, a big weight was lifted off my shoulders when the Lord helped me realize this! So, these are huge reasons to be glad when others mistreat you and you face trials (James 1:2-4).

If you have said or done wrong to someone, ask them to forgive you (Matthew 5:23-25).

If you have problems that weren't discussed, please ask a pastor to give you advice.

## Chapter 25

### AN EFFECTIVE CLOSING MESSAGE TO USE

This chapter features an effective closing message for pastors and evangelists to use when they have preached the kind of message in this book -

Right now, it's time for everybody to be honest: From looking at the size of this audience, I am positive that everybody is not living the way I just preached. All through the New Testament, you will see that half-way is not accepted. Second Corinthians 5:17 says, "Therefore if any man *be* in Christ, *he is* a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new." If you're a Christian, more and more over time, every area of your life is going to be different from what it used to be, and every area of your life is going to involve God (2 Corinthians 3:18). Your thoughts, conversations with people who will listen, what you watch and listen to, the way you spend your time each day, where you go, future goals, physical safety (Matthew 10:28), and the way you handle your money will all be centered on God.

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you haven't been living this way, ask God to forgive you for this. Then, "from this moment on", try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) to begin living this way, with God helping you change.)

If in the future you haven't tried your absolute best to live this way, ask God to forgive you for that. After that, "from that moment on" try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) to begin living this way again, with God helping you change. (Continue to follow this pattern every time you fail to live this way.)

Another way to apply this is:

1. What do you enjoy doing the most each day? Is it witnessing to and/or helping others, and when you aren't doing that, thinking about the things of God, or is it something that doesn't involve God?

2. Who do you enjoy spending your time with the most each day? Is it the Lord or someone else? (Although, you can spend all your time with someone and live the Christian lifestyle together.)

3. What do you spend more of your time, other than work or school, etc., doing each day? Is it witnessing to and/or helping others, and when you aren't doing that, thinking about the things of God, or is it something else?

4. What or who do you spend more of your time, other than work or school, etc., thinking about each day? Is it the things of God or something or someone else?

(If you have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but your answers are something other than witnessing to and/or helping others, and when you aren't doing that, trying to think about the things of God and center everything around Him, please ask God to forgive you for not living this way. After that, "from this moment on" try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) to begin living this way, with God helping you change.)

If in the future you haven't tried your absolute best to live this way, ask God to forgive you for that. After that, "from that moment on" try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) to begin living this way again, with God helping you change. (Continue to follow this pattern every time you fail to live this way.)

Also, if you continually sin like you did before you prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, and it doesn't bother you, please come forward and receive Jesus as your Lord and Savior (Hebrews 12:5–11).

If you have never prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, please realize that you need to be willing to let Jesus take over every area of your life, and if you're willing to begin living this way after you pray or make a decision to become a Christian, your heart should be prepared to receive Jesus (This is explained in much of the free online book featured at this website – [www.areasureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areasureyouaresaved.com)). Then, come forward and receive Christ. You may never have another opportunity like this. Please don't leave until you know you are going to heaven.

## Chapter 26

### PREPARING TO WITNESS

When you feel the Lord is wanting you to tell people how they can become Christians, pray and believe that the Holy Spirit will give you the right words and that He will prepare their hearts, so they will be receptive and become saved.

After that, tell God that you're doing this for the Lord Jesus and are thankful for the opportunity (Colossians 3:17), and the reason you're witnessing is because you want the person or people to go to heaven, you want them to know the purpose of life, and you want them to think good about God. (Matthew 5:16 - "Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify (**This means praise.**) your Father which is in heaven.") Be sure not to have the wrong desires when you witness. When you witness, don't do it out of unwanted duty (see chapter 40 of this book). Also, you shouldn't be proud and brag to others that you witness and have lead people to Jesus in order to make yourself look good.

It would be very helpful and useful if you carry this book with you to help you witness to others in different situations, and have printed copies of this website - <http://chriswaug5.wixsite.com/howtogoheaven> (which is the same as chapter 41 of this book) to give to those who don't have the internet or are in hospitals and nursing homes, etc.

## Chapter 27

### HOW TO WITNESS IN URGENT SITUATIONS

There may be times when someone is dying, urgently comes to you and wants to be saved, or they would love to get saved, but there isn't enough time to explain a lot. When these circumstances happen, their hearts may be prepared to receive Jesus (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of this book).

So, you should say something like this, "If you don't die, realize that you need to be willing for Jesus to take over every moment (Whenever you aren't helping others, try to think about the things of God.) and every area of your life (your thoughts, conversations with people who will listen, what you watch and listen to, where you go, plans of each day, future goals, not avoiding witnessing to and/or helping others when the Holy Spirit gives you thoughts to do these things because you're afraid of getting killed or robbed (Matthew 10:28), and the way you handle your money). Are you willing to live this way "from this moment on"? Yes or no?"

If your answer is 'yes', do you want God to forgive you for all your sins, and do you trust Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believe Jesus arose from the dead? Yes or no?"

If they say 'yes', your mission will be accomplished.

But if God keeps them alive, you should do the following things:

Give them this free printable website - <http://chriswaug5.wix.com/howtogotoheaven> (This website gives directions as to how to access chapter 41 of this book's online version featured at this website - [www.areyousureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areyousureyouaresaved.com)) (If they want to print it, they may have to copy and paste it to Microsoft Word or something like that and print it from there.)

If they don't have access to the internet, give them a printed copy. In case they pray to become a Christian after reading it, give them a printed copy of this website too - <http://chriswaug5.wix.com/makingsure> (This website gives directions as to how to access chapter 10 of this book's online version featured at this website - [www.areyousureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areyousureyouaresaved.com))

If you have enough time, you can read it to them (which is chapter 41 of this book), but it would be good if they read it, so they won't rush into making a decision to get saved without first realizing what they are getting themselves into (Luke 14:25-35) and knowing they can't change their mind and go back to living the way they used to live (Luke 9:61-62). However, tell them they shouldn't put this off because they may not have another opportunity to become a Christian (2 Corinthians 6:2 and Proverbs 29:1).

Be willing to help these new believers with problems they may face.

## Chapter 28

### WITNESSING DURING PLANED VISITS

If the Holy Spirit urges and gives you thoughts to visit or call people in order to witness to them in their homes, hospital rooms, nursing home rooms, or prisons, this chapter will be helpful.

Give them this free printable website - <http://chriswaug5.wix.com/howtogoheaven> (This website gives directions as to how to access chapter 41 of this book's online version featured at this website - [www.areasureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areasureyouaresaved.com)) (If they want to print it, they may have to copy and paste it to Microsoft Word or something like that and print it from there.)

If they don't have access to the internet, give them a printed copy. In case they pray to become a Christian after reading it, give them a printed copy of this website too - <http://chriswaug5.wix.com/makingsure> (This website gives directions as to how to access chapter 10 of this book's online version featured at this website - [www.areasureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areasureyouaresaved.com))

If you have enough time, you can read it to them (which is chapter 41 of this book), but it would be good if they read it, so they won't rush into making a decision to get saved without first realizing what they are getting themselves into (Luke 14:25-35) and knowing they can't change their mind and go back to living the way they used to live (Luke 9:61-62). However, tell them they shouldn't put this off because they may not have another opportunity to become a Christian (2 Corinthians 6:2 and Proverbs 29:1).

Be willing to help these new believers with problems they may face.

## Chapter 29

### PEOPLE WHO SAY THEY HAVE BEEN SAVED

A great way to begin witnessing to someone you don't know at a store, mall, or restaurant, etc. is to start up a conversation, and ask them if they have ever been to your church. If you have a card with your church's address ([You can also give them the website for my online church - http://chriswaug5.wix.com/sermons](http://chriswaug5.wix.com/sermons)), you could give it to the stranger. Tell them this card has your church's address and location, then ask them if they have ever been. They can either say 'yes' or 'no', then you can tell them that the best decision you ever made was to become a Christian. Ask them if they have ever prayed to become a Christian or gone forward in a church service in order to become a Christian, and if they say 'yes', or 'they aren't sure', tell them a very helpful way for them to know if they are really a Christian is explained at this website – <http://chriswaug5.wix.com/makingsure>

If they don't have access to the internet, give them a printed copy and the chapters that are referenced in it, if they are interested in reading them.

## Chapter 30

### PEOPLE WHO SAY THEY HAVEN'T BEEN SAVED

#### **This chapter is a continuation of chapter 29:**

If the Holy Spirit urges and gives you thoughts to ask someone if they are a Christian, and they say they aren't, give them this free printable website - <http://chriswaug5.wix.com/howtogoheaven> (This website gives directions as to how to access chapter 41 of this book's online version featured at this website - [www.areasureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areasureyouaresaved.com)) (If they want to print it, they may have to copy and paste it to Microsoft Word or something like that and print it from there.)

If they don't have access to the internet, give them a printed copy. In case they pray to become a Christian after reading it, give them a printed copy of this website too - <http://chriswaug5.wix.com/makingsure> (This website gives directions as to how to access chapter 10 of this book's online version featured at this website - [www.areasureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areasureyouaresaved.com))

If you have enough time, you can read it to them (which is chapter 41 of this book), but it would be good if they read it, so they won't rush into making a decision to get saved without first realizing what they are getting themselves into (Luke 14:25-35) and knowing they can't change their mind and go back to living the way they used to live (Luke 9:61-62). However, tell them they shouldn't put this off because they may not have another opportunity to become a Christian (2 Corinthians 6:2 and Proverbs 29:1).

Be willing to help these new believers with problems they may face.

## Chapter 31

### HOW TO WITNESS TO PEOPLE OF DIFFERENT BELIEFS

A lot of Christians who try to tell people how to become Christians, come across many who claim they don't believe in God or the Bible, or they may be Jewish, Muslim, or some other religion. The following is a section from Dr. Roy B. Zuck's pamphlet "Is the Bible True?" "No book other than the Bible has ever given precise predictions of future events (prophecies) hundreds of years in advance, predictions that were fulfilled exactly. Far from vague generalities or general guesses like those of fortunetellers, the prophecies in Scripture contain explicit details which no human could possibly devise on his own. Imagine trying to come up with the name, ancestry, birthplace, and kind of death for a person who would be born in AD 2800. That would be humanly impossible! Only God could make such predictions and see them carried out perfectly. But that is exactly what we have in the Bible. Jesus' identity, name, birthplace, triumphal entry, betrayal, suffering, death, and burial-all were foretold in the Old Testament seven hundred years before He was born. If only 48 prophecies about a person were fulfilled, the odds would be 1 in  $10^{157}$ . That's a one followed by 157 zeros! And Jesus fulfilled more than 300 prophecies!" That is overwhelming evidence for those who claim they don't believe.

If these people realize they need to become Christians, give them this website - <http://chriswaug5.wix.com/howtogoheaven> (If they want to print it, they may have to copy and paste it to Microsoft Word or something like that and print it from there.)

If they don't have access to the internet, give them a printed copy. In case they pray to become a Christian after reading it, give them a printed copy of this website too - <http://chriswaug5.wix.com/makingsure>

If you have enough time, you can read it to them (which is chapter 41 of this book), but it would be good if they read it, so they won't rush into making a decision to get saved without first realizing what they are getting themselves into (Luke 14:25-35) and knowing they can't change their mind and go back to living the way they used to live (Luke 9:61-62). However, tell them they

shouldn't put this off because they may not have another opportunity to become a Christian (2 Corinthians 6:2 and Proverbs 29:1).

Be willing to help these new believers with problems they may face.

## Chapter 32

### WITNESSING BY USING THE INTERNET

Whenever you aren't able to tell people how they can become Christians at different places, you can still witness to people at home through different websites. There are websites where you can have a message on top of your profile page encouraging people to read [www.areasofstudy.com](http://www.areasofstudy.com) and get it out to their church, other churches, and other people. Websites like dating sites allow you to click thousands of people's profiles, and they can be notified that you viewed their profile by clicking the "viewed me" button. After that, a new screen appears, and they can click your user name. Then, your profile page should appear, and they can see where you posted on the top of your profile encouraging people to read [www.areasofstudy.com](http://www.areasofstudy.com) and get it out to their church, other churches, and other people. As a result, thousands more can read it, and many can be saved. You can encourage others to put the same message on their profile page as well. The cycle can keep repeating!

You can use social media websites like [www.facebook.com](http://www.facebook.com) and send messages to your friends and/or post the following on your profile page, "If you want to be sure you are going to heaven, check out this must read Christian website – [www.areasofstudy.com](http://www.areasofstudy.com) For those of you who go to church, please give this website to your church, other churches, and other people!" As a result, thousands can read it, and many can be saved. You can encourage others to put the same message on their profile page as well. The cycle can keep repeating!

Also, you can use websites like <http://www.omegle.com> where you can chat with random people, and you can copy and paste the content in - <http://chriswaug5.wix.com/howtogoheaven>

These random people can read what you pasted and can become saved as a result. You can also tell them to save the message you sent them so they can read it again. If they say they have already been saved, you can copy and paste the content in - <http://chriswaug5.wix.com/makingsure>

## Chapter 33

### HOW TO DEFEND YOURSELF WHEN WITNESSING

After you have followed the outlines from chapters 27-32 and attempted to lead others to Jesus, there will probably be angry people from different church denominations ready to tell you that you're going to hell for witnessing the wrong way. When these people begin to harass you, don't let it bother you. Calmly tell them that you don't want to argue. Instead, give them this website - [www.areyousureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areyousureyouaresaved.com) and particularly this website - <http://chriswaug5.wix.com/nocontridiction> (If they want to print it, they may have to copy and paste it to Microsoft Word or something like that and print it from there.)

Tell them that this website has Bible verses and explanations that prove you didn't witness incorrectly. Calmly leave, and don't take it any further. If people send you harassing emails or messages on social media, tell them the same thing. If they continue to send you harassing messages, don't open them, and delete them.

Satan would love for you to be discouraged and held back from leading people to Jesus, and he will trick some into doing it for him. I have personally experienced this, and it isn't very pleasant. So, through those trials God has taught me how to handle these conflicts.

Instead of having bitter thoughts over and over about these people, which is what Satan wants you to spend your time doing, pray for them, and tell God that you forgive them. You could ask God to greatly bless and use them in awesome ways, ask God to protect them, and ask Him to help them understand the Bible so they can lead many to His Son.

If Satan reminds you of the people who harassed you, and you begin to have bitter thoughts about them, immediately ask God to forgive you for that. Then, immediately obey James 4:7-8 “Submit yourselves therefore to God. (Immediately, allow Him to take back His control over your life.) Resist the devil, and he will flee from you. (Tell Satan to leave.) Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you (Begin doing things like studying the Bible, thinking about what you studied, praying, talking about the Bible with people who will listen, and telling people how to become Christians and/or doing other things to help those who have needs.)...”

## Chapter 34

### "GOOD" WORKS ARE NOT A "BAD" THING

Many churches and professing Christians have a very wrong view about good works (These are things such as giving money to those who have needs (Luke 12:16-21), teaching the Bible (Matthew 28:19), counseling with people who are having problems (Galatians 6:2), encouraging others (Hebrews 10:25), correcting believers when they sin (Galatians 6:1), and telling people how to become Christians (2 Timothy 4:5) by mouth, through email or social media, and/or by handing out or dropping off tracts that explain how to become a Christian in places like stores or restaurants where people can pick them up; feeding, clothing, and finding shelter for the less fortunate, and visiting people in hospitals and jails (Matthew 25:35-36; Mark 12:30-31; Titus 3:14); doing acts of kindness for people that will cause them to think good about God (for example - cooking, cleaning, doing yard work, helping shop, washing cars, fixing appliances) (Matthew 5:16; Titus 3:14).) and its relationship to salvation. I've personally experienced that when I've witnessed to someone or posted something on the internet and mentioned good works, people have done such things as mentioned Ephesians 2:8-9 which says, "For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: *it is* the gift of God: Not of works, lest any man should boast."

Those verses are very true, because we can never do enough good things that would cause our sins to be erased so we can go to heaven. The blood that Jesus shed on the cross is the absolute only thing that can erase our sins so we can go to heaven. Revelation 1:5 proclaims, "And from Jesus Christ, *who is* the faithful witness, *and* the first begotten of the dead, and the prince of the kings of the earth. Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood,"

If Jesus hadn't shed His blood and died on the cross and arose from the dead, we wouldn't be able to enter heaven. Nevertheless, many people trust that to get them into heaven, but they have the idea that they will believe that and just relax and take it easy for the rest of their lives and wait for heaven. They have the wrong understanding of "grace". Titus 2:11-12 says, "For the grace of God that bringeth salvation hath appeared to all men, Teaching us that, denying ungodliness and worldly lusts, we should live soberly, righteously, and godly, in this present world;" Someone can trust Jesus' shed blood on the cross to save them by grace, but if that belief never results

in them living soberly (being able to control themselves by not giving in to anger (It's normal to be angry with people who sin against them, though, but dwelling on it for an extended time or retaliating and bearing a grudge is sinful (Ephesians 4:26; Romans 12:19; Leviticus 19:18).), lust (For example, wanting (coveting) another man's wife should be avoided (Matthew 5:27-30), and it also becomes sinful when someone plans how and when they will do any form of a sexual act (Ephesians 5:3) with someone they aren't married to (This is evil desire (Colossians 3:5) and impure thoughts (Philippians 4:8).) and carry those acts out (James 1:14-15). When they do these sexual acts, they give in to impurity (1 Thessalonians 4:7, Colossians 3:5) and weren't able to control their body in sanctification and honor (1 Thessalonians 4:3-5). If they aren't able to stop doing sexual acts, they should become married – 1 Corinthians 7:9.), entertainment that doesn't involve God (see chapter 23 of this book), over eating, etc., righteously (living a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book), and godly (fearing (They love God so much that they are afraid of disappointing Him by sinning.), worshiping God, keeping His commandments, not giving up living the Christian lifestyle because of trials (patience), being able to control themselves by not giving in to anger (see previous note), lust (see previous note.), entertainment that doesn't involve God (see chapter 23 of this book), over eating, etc. (temperance); doing what's right even if it could lead to physical, mental, and/or financial suffering and trials; and following Jesus. (For an example of how to follow Jesus, see chapter 39 of this book.), they wasn't really saved in the first place.

The Bible is clear that someone can be saved by believing John 3:16 which says, "For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life." Although, someone can believe John 3:16, but if the person who believes **"never in their life" (with the exception of those who get saved but don't live long after that or people who are in bad health and can't get out and do much) changes and begins to do good works, they was never saved in the first place.** This is explained in James 2:26, "For as the body without the spirit is dead, so faith without works is dead also." A similar verse is Titus 1:16, "They profess that they know God; but in works they deny *him*, being abominable, and disobedient, and unto every good work reprobate."

Of course it takes time for a new Christian to grow and follow Jesus (live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book), and many pray or make decisions to become

Christians shortly before they pass on, they may pass on without warning after they have been a Christian for a short amount of time, or they may be in bad health and don't have a lot of opportunities to do good works. In situations like these, there may not be enough evidence for that person's friends or family to know if the person made it to heaven. (The 19<sup>th</sup> indented paragraph of the introduction of this book has more helpful information on this topic, beginning with this sentence, "A final note before you begin reading the chapters of this book: this book's message has a lot to say about your personal walk with the Lord and how to know you are going to heaven.")

A lot of people ignore or don't understand James 2:26 and Titus 1:16, and they claim that people who make professions of faith but never have major changes in the way they live and do good works afterwards are really saved, because they will quote 1 Corinthians 3:15 which says, "If any man's work shall be burned, he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved; yet so as by fire."

Although, they don't include 1 Corinthians 3:5-15, "Who then is Paul, and who *is* Apollos, but ministers by whom ye believed, even as the Lord gave to every man? I have planted, Apollos watered; but God gave the increase. So then neither is he that planteth any thing, neither he that watereth; but God that giveth the increase. Now he that planteth and he that watereth are one: and every man shall receive his own reward according to his own labour. For we are labourers together with God: ye are God's husbandry, *ye are* God's building. According to the grace of God which is given unto me, as a wise masterbuilder, I have laid the foundation, and another buildeth thereon. But let every man take heed how he buildeth thereupon. For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ. Now if any man build upon this foundation gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, stubble; Every man's work shall be made manifest: for the day shall declare it, because it shall be revealed by fire; and the fire shall try every man's work of what sort it is. If any man's work abide which he hath built thereupon, he shall receive a reward. If any man's work shall be burned, he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved; yet so as by fire."

These verses are referring to Christians who are pastors, teachers, people with the gift of evangelism, and people who are called to build the church through faithful ministry. The gold, silver, and precious stones are referring to Christians who are pastors, teachers, people with the gift of evangelism, and people who are called to build the church through faithful ministry who are dedicated and really search the Bible to learn how to help others. As a result, the people they

minister to become Christians and go on to minister to other people, for example, and these Christians are rewarded for this in heaven (see 2 Corinthians 5:9-11). The wood, hay, and stubble represent Christians who are pastors, teachers, people with the gift of evangelism, and people who are called to build the church through faithful ministry who, on certain occasions, hurriedly help others but don't really care if their attempts had positive impacts or search the Bible for knowledge as to how to be more effective. These Christians who are pastors, teachers, people with the gift of evangelism, and people who are called to build the church through faithful ministry who **perform lazy attempts** of good works will have those **lazy attempts of good works burnt up, but they will enter heaven. They will not be rewarded for those lazy attempts of good works at the judgment seat of Christ.** Besides, the Bible would contradict itself because of James 2:26 and Titus 1:16.

Many also don't realize that if someone wants to become a Christian, they must be consciously or unconsciously (see the 6<sup>th</sup> point of chapter 6 of this book for more explanations) **willing to begin doing good works (following Jesus) after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian.** I do believe, however, that the majority of people who are Christians didn't consider that before they (asked Jesus into their heart, believed that Jesus is their Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase their sins and let them into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc.). Their hearts were already very willing to put Jesus first in their lives before they made decisions to become Christians, and it really showed because they began to do good works afterwards. When someone gets saved and the Holy Spirit comes into their heart, that person will definitely have major changes in the way they live, no matter what they said in their prayer to become a Christian.

**Tragically, the point is that multitudes pray or make decisions to become Christians so they will go to heaven, but they have little or no desires to truly follow Jesus "from that moment on". I promise you, a major part of following Jesus is doing good works.** While Jesus was on earth, He caused people to praise and think good about God by helping others (doing good works), and when He wasn't doing that, His mind was on the things of His Father. This is how someone needs to be "consciously or unconsciously willing to live for the rest of their life" (If you have read the 6<sup>th</sup> paragraph of chapter 2 of this book, you will see that someone can be unconsciously willing to begin following Jesus after they accept Him as their Savior and be

prepared to become a Christian, but in the New Testament we see examples of people who consciously were not willing to follow Jesus “from that moment on and for the rest of their lives”. As a result, the people who turned away from Him gave up their chance to receive salvation at that time.), and if they are willing to begin living that way after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian, they are ready to become a Christian by believing that Jesus is their Savior, because their heart is prepared to receive Jesus (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of this book). **Jesus repeatedly drove thousands away from heaven because they were not willing to follow (imitate and obey) Him - Please see chapters 6 and 7 of this book.**

Philippians 2:5-8 instructs, "Let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus: Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God: But made himself of no reputation, and took upon him the form of a servant, and was made in the likeness of men: And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross." **Clearly, Jesus did many things to help others (John 21:25), and another word for helping others is "serving" others. In John 12:26 Jesus said, "If any man serve me, let him follow me; and where I am, there shall also my servant be: if any man serve me, him will my Father honour." As previously mentioned, the people who weren't willing to follow Jesus didn't go to heaven. Since "serving" others is a major part of "following" Jesus (John 12:26), if someone knows that they will never help or "serve" others, they aren't ready to be saved (even if they trust Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase their sins and let them into heaven and believe He arose from the dead). When someone helps or "serves" others, they are actually "serving" Jesus. Jesus said in Matthew 25:40, "And the King shall answer and say unto them, Verily I say unto you, Inasmuch as ye have done *it* unto one of the least of these my brethren, ye have done *it* unto me."**

To summarize the previous points before we go any further -

Someone can't get into heaven by "earning" their salvation by doing good works; they have to trust Jesus to save them. Nevertheless, someone could trust Jesus' shed blood to save them and believe He arose from the dead, but if they never began to do good works (with the exception of those who get saved but don't live long after that or people who are in bad health and can't get out and do much) "after" that, they wasn't saved in the first place (James 2:26; Titus 1:16).

Although, Matthew 7:21-23 shares points that can't be overlooked, "Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven. Many will say to me in that day, Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name? and in thy name have cast out devils? and in thy name done many wonderful works? And then will I profess unto them, I never knew you: depart from me, ye that work iniquity." Verse 22 seems to suggest that the people Jesus was addressing really did do good works after they believed. But, Jesus said in verse 23, "And then will I profess unto them, I never knew you: depart from me, ye that work iniquity (**which means sins**)." So, it is possible for someone to do good works after they make a profession of faith, but if they do them in unwanted duty (explained in chapter 40 of this book), and/or continually sin like they did before they prayed or made a decision to become a Christian without trying to change their sinful ways, they was never really saved either. It's also possible that the people Jesus addressed believed they could earn their salvation by doing good works.

Similar verses are 1 Corinthians 13:1-7, "Though I speak with the tongues of men and of angels, and have not charity, I am become *as* sounding brass, or a tinkling cymbal. And though I have *the gift of* prophecy, and understand all mysteries, and all knowledge; and though I have all faith, so that I could remove mountains, and have not charity, I am nothing. And though I bestow all my goods to feed *the poor*, and though I give my body to be burned, and have not charity, it profiteth me nothing. Charity suffereth long, *and* is kind; charity envieth not; charity vaunteth not itself, is not puffed up, Doth not behave itself unseemly, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil; Rejoiceth not in iniquity, but rejoiceth in the truth; Beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things."

Someone can trust Jesus' shed blood to save them and believe He arose from the dead, but if they had the idea that they was mainly just going to believe in Jesus' work on the cross so they could go to heaven but knew they wasn't going to try to follow Jesus (live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book) after they believed, with the exception of going to church and reading the Bible every once in a while, they wouldn't make it to heaven with that motive. In Jesus' day, many believed in Him because of the miracles He performed, but He didn't commit Himself to them. These people believed in Him, but Jesus knew they weren't willing to be "committed" to Him and begin to truly follow Him (do good works, for example), and as a result,

Jesus didn't "commit" Himself to them, and they didn't become Christians at that time (John 2:23-25).

If I told you that you must "do" good works in order to become a Christian, I would be very wrong. Although, from what you have read in this chapter, you must be consciously or unconsciously (see the 6<sup>th</sup> point of chapter 6 of this book for more explanations) "**willing**" to begin doing good works (follow Jesus) after you pray or make a decision to get saved "**if**" you want to be saved.

In John 10:27-28 Jesus stated, "My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me: And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any *man* pluck them out of my hand." If you plan on going to heaven, you must be a follower of Jesus, and a major part of following Jesus is doing good works.

(If you have never prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you haven't been living the way this chapter has explained, ask God to forgive you. Then, "from this moment on", try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) to begin living this way, with God helping you change.)

(If you haven't done good works when the Holy Spirit leads you to do so, ask God to forgive you for that, and try do better in the future.) (Please follow chapter 10 of this book for more information.)

## Chapter 35

### HOW TO DEFEAT SATAN

In Matthew 4:1-11 Jesus gave Christians the key to defeat Satan when he tempts them (urges and gives them thoughts to sin). The key is to know what the Bible says are sins, and when Satan tries to get you to do them, refuse to do so.

The best way to know what sins are and how to avoid saying, thinking, and doing them is described in Romans 12:2 which says, "And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what *is* that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God." You should stay away from worldly things, spend time studying the Bible, and think about what you have studied throughout each day. Whenever you're in a situation and don't know what to do or not to do, try to remember what you learned, and do it or don't do it.

If someone is a Christian, Satan will tempt them (try to get them to sin) for the rest of their life. He does this because he wants people around Christians to see or hear them sin so they will think that they are no different from and are just as good as Christians. As a result, many of these people won't decide to get saved. The only way to prevent this from happening is when you have a thought pop into your mind to sin, don't do it.

Even though Satan doesn't speak to us, he gives us thoughts that pop into our minds that encourage us to sin. For example, if you have an opportunity to tell your friend that someone they know got arrested for drunk driving, don't do it. The person who got arrested would be embarrassed if a bunch of people knew about it (Matthew 7:12).

If you learn what sins are, you will know what not to say, think, and do when Satan gives you thoughts to say, think, and do them. Also, avoid saying, thinking, and doing things that you think might be sinful (Isaiah 30:21; Romans 14:23). In some cases, doing a certain activity like eating steak, for example, isn't a sin, but if you are convinced that it is a sin, you're sinning if you eat it. This is taught in Romans 14:23. Once you grow as a Christian, you should gain confidence in knowing what is sinful and what isn't. Another way eating steak or talking about sports, for example, would be sinful is if a young Christian hears you talking about it and becomes

discouraged because they think it is sinful to watch sports (Romans 14:15, 16, 20-22). You also shouldn't judge and look down upon a young Christian and their immature faith and convictions (Romans 14:1-4).

Please go to this website for many sins to avoid -

[http://www.amazingbible.org/Documents/Bible\\_Studies/Sin\\_list\\_part\\_6.htm](http://www.amazingbible.org/Documents/Bible_Studies/Sin_list_part_6.htm)

(If you have never prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you haven't been living the way this chapter has explained, ask God to forgive you for this. Then, "from this moment on", try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) to begin living the way this chapter has explained, with God helping you change.)

If in the future you haven't tried your absolute best to live this way, ask God to forgive you for that. After that, "from that moment on" try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) to begin living this way again, with God helping you change. (Continue to follow this pattern every time you fail to live this way.) (Please follow chapter 10 of this book for more information.)

## Chapter 36

### ARE THERE SINS THAT CAN'T BE FORGIVEN?

Are there sins that can't be forgiven? Perhaps no other question has troubled the minds of people more than this question. The good news is that if you are "worried" that you have said, thought, or done something that God won't forgive, that is proof you "can" be forgiven. In this chapter, you will see the Bible proves this.

Matthew 12:22-32 is the key, and it sets the tone for the rest of this chapter. Jesus had been preaching and performing miracles for two years when this event occurred, and the Pharisees who committed the unpardonable sin (which means this sin can't be forgiven) had to have heard many of Jesus' messages and seen many of His miracles. This evidence clearly proved that Jesus was the Son of God and the Savior of the world. The Holy Ghost (also called the Holy Spirit) is the third person in the Trinity, which represents God in three ways – God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Ghost. One of the Holy Ghost's purposes is to urge people to repent and accept Jesus as their Savior so they can go to heaven when they leave this world. For two years, the Holy Ghost proved to the Pharisees who committed the unpardonable sin that Jesus was the Son of God and the Savior of the world, but they repeatedly refused to believe that. Every time someone is urged by the Holy Ghost to get saved, and they decide not to do that, their heart can become harder. Tragically, someone can keep putting off that decision, and their heart can become so hard that they are unable to get saved. (This is explained in Proverbs 29:1.) This is exactly what happened to the Pharisees. After two years, there wasn't any more evidence the Pharisees needed to realize that Jesus was the Son of God and the Savior of the world. They proved there was no hope for them to be saved when they concluded that Jesus got his power to cast the demon out of the man from Satan, and they never changed their mind, they weren't sorry, or they never asked God to forgive them for thinking and saying that. This is the definition of the sin that can't be forgiven (the unpardonable sin).

So, if someone repeatedly decides not to pray or make a decision to become a Christian, they can be in danger of being unable to get saved permanently. However, possibly many who have never been saved or people who have already prayed or made decisions to get saved worry

that they have said, thought, and/or done something that God will not forgive, and they are afraid they are going to hell because of it. The people in these situations are sorry for what they have said, thought, and/or done. This proves these people can be forgiven and can either become Christians or remain Christians. All sins can be forgiven (Matthew 12:31), but if someone firmly believes that Jesus gets His power from Satan and never changes their mind and isn't sorry for saying and/or thinking that, they are unable to become a Christian (Matthew 12:32).

Although Judas didn't have the same thoughts or say the same thing the Pharisees said in Matthew 12:24, he continued to steal from the money bag he was in charge of (John 12:6). When someone continues to sin and refuses to repent and truly accept Jesus as their Savior, their heart and conscious can become too hard. As a result, they are unable to become a Christian (like the Pharisees in Matthew 12:22-32). Proverbs 29:1 reveals, "He, that being often reprov'd hardeneth *his* neck, shall suddenly be destroyed, and that without remedy." Also, see Romans 1:18-32 and Hosea 4:17 where God literally gave these people up because they wouldn't repent (**turn from**) of their sins. God gave Judas up, and as a result, Satan entered him (Luke 22:3). Then, Luke 22:4-6 records, "And he went his way, and communed with the chief priests and captains, how he might betray him (This is referring to Jesus.) unto them. And they were glad, and covenanted to give him money. And he promised, and sought opportunity to betray him unto them in the absence of the multitude." Nevertheless, Matthew 27:3-4 teaches us that Judas repented, but it was too late because Satan had already entered him and caused him to hang himself (Matthew 27:5). Peter also repented after he denied that he knew the Lord for the third time, because he went out and wept bitterly (Matthew 26:75). This proved that Peter had a broken spirit and a broken and contrite heart because of these sins, and God forgave him (Psalm 51:17 and Psalm 34:18). But unlike Judas, his repentance resulted in him preaching at Pentecost where about three thousand people were saved (Acts 2:41) and doing many other wonderful things that are recorded in the New Testament.

Peter's example seems unforgivable, but it isn't. Matthew 26:31-35; 69-75 covers this event, and also keep in mind Psalm 51:17 which says, "The sacrifices of God *are* a broken spirit: a broken and a contrite heart, O God, thou wilt not despise." In Matthew 26:72, Peter denied with an oath (or swore to God) that he didn't know Jesus. Also, when Peter began to **curse** and to swear, and said, "I know not the man.", he literally swore that God could strike him dead, or he was going to hell if he knew Jesus. Another way to describe this is that Peter called down **curses** on himself.

The word **'curse'**, which is used in Matthew 26:74, means the same thing as 'Anathema Maranatha' or **'accursed'**, that's used in 1 Corinthians 16:22. This verse says, "If any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be Anathema Maranatha." This means if anyone does not love the Lord Jesus Christ, that person is going to hell. Obviously, there isn't anyone in heaven who doesn't love Jesus, and it is very possible for someone to not love Jesus and later change their mind and decide they want to become a Christian. (Also, don't forget that every sin can be forgiven (Matthew 12:31).) After Peter denied that he knew Jesus for the third time, and the rooster crowed, Peter had realized what he had done, and he went out and wept bitterly (Matthew 26:75). This proved that Peter was sorry for saying that (Psalm 51:17). It is a well-known biblical fact that Peter was forgiven and went on to do amazing things for the Lord. This proved he was a Christian, even after what he said in Matthew 26:74.

First Corinthians 11:17-34 seems to mean if someone takes Communion (remembers Jesus' body that was broken for them by eating the bread and the new testament in Jesus' blood by drinking the wine or grape juice) and has never prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, they can't be forgiven and will go to hell. First Corinthians 11:17-34 also seems to mean if someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian and takes Communion in an unworthy manner (not caring, doing it to make fun of Jesus, not giving it much thought, or eating the bread only because they are hungry or drinking a bunch of the wine in order to get drunk), they aren't really saved, and they are unable to get saved and will go to hell. Although, if someone takes Communion and isn't a Christian or has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian and takes it in an unworthy manner, but they feel guilty, sorry for what they have done, and they want God to forgive them (Psalm 51:17), that person is chastened of the Lord so they won't be condemned with the world (1 Corinthians 11:32; Hebrews 12:5-11). If someone feels guilty, sorry, and they want God to forgive them for taking Communion in an unworthy manner, that means they are able to become a Christian or remain a Christian.

Although, if someone has not prayed or made a decision to become a Christian and they take Communion and learn that they shouldn't have done that, but they "never" feel guilty, sorry, or want God to forgive them (Psalm 51:17), that proves that person is "not" able to become a Christian because their heart has become too hard (Matthew 12:22-32; Proverbs 29:1). If someone has prayed or made a decision to become a Christian and take Communion in an unworthy manner

(not caring, doing it to make fun of Jesus, not giving it much thought, or eating the bread only because they are hungry or drinking a bunch of the wine in order to get drunk), and they “never” feel guilty, sorry, or want God to forgive them (Psalm 51:17), they was never a Christian in the first place (Matthew 12:22-32; Proverbs 29:1).

Another important topic is found in Hebrews 10:26-29 which says, “For if we sin wilfully after that we have received the knowledge of the truth, there remaineth no more sacrifice for sins, But a certain fearful looking for of judgment and fiery indignation, which shall devour the adversaries. He that despised Moses' law died without mercy under two or three witnesses: Of how much sorer punishment, suppose ye, shall he be thought worthy, who hath trodden under foot the Son of God, and hath counted the blood of the covenant, wherewith he was sanctified, an unholy thing, and hath done despite unto the Spirit of grace?” There are people who pray or make decisions to become Christians, **and they continue to sin on purpose (knowing they are going to continue saying, thinking, doing, or desiring a particular sin or other sins “without trying” to stop saying, thinking, doing, and/or desiring them).** They believe they can keep asking God to forgive them, and He will. **The people who live this way believe they are saved, but they are misled. These people will never be saved until they “truly” repent of their sins and trust Jesus to save them.**

The mark of the beast is another topic that can be added to this chapter. During the seven years of tribulation, people won't be able to buy or sale unless they have that mark, and if they take the mark, they can't be forgiven (Revelation 13:16-18). Also see Revelation 20:4, 16:2, 19:20, and 14:9-11.

Revelation 22:18-19 means there are those who could add or take away from the Bible in order to disrespect God or in order to trick others, hoping they will believe what is false and go to hell. The people who would trick others like that and aren't sorry and never change their ways, prove they aren't able to be saved (Matthew 12:22-32).

In conclusion, any sin can be forgiven. No matter what you have thought, said, and/or done, it can be forgiven.

(If you have never prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

(If you have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but you are not sure you are really a Christian (Hebrews 11:6, Matthew 21:18-22, 1 John 5:14, and Hebrews 11:1), please follow chapter 41 of this book.)

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you have said, thought, and/or done something that was mentioned in this chapter or any other sin, ask God to forgive you for this. Then, "from this moment on" try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) not to do it again.)

If in the future you say, think, and/or do something that was mentioned in this chapter or any other sin, ask God to forgive you for that. Then, "from that moment on" try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) not to do it again. (Continue to follow this pattern every time you fail to live this way.) (Please follow chapter 10 of this book for more information.)

## Chapter 37

### HOW TO HAVE YOUR PRAYERS ANSWERED

Believing that God will answer your prayers is very important. Most importantly, when you pray to become a Christian, you have to believe that whenever you tell God that you believe Jesus is your Savior or trust Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and believe He arose from the dead, etc., you "know" that your sins will be erased. The same belief can be used when you ask God to heal you and others, help you make the right decisions, and save people who are not Christians. You must have faith (know that your prayers will be answered) in order to have your prayers answered. Hebrews 11:1 declares, "Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen." Similar verses are Matthew 21:18-22, "Now in the morning as he returned into the city, he hungered. And when he saw a fig tree in the way, he came to it, and found nothing thereon, but leaves only, and said unto it, Let no fruit grow on thee henceforward for ever. And presently the fig tree withered away. And when the disciples saw it, they marvelled, saying, How soon is the fig tree withered away! Jesus answered and said unto them, Verily I say unto you, If ye have faith, and doubt not, ye shall not only do this *which is done* to the fig tree, but also if ye shall say unto this mountain, Be thou removed, and be thou cast into the sea; it shall be done. And all things, whatsoever ye shall ask in prayer, believing, ye shall receive."

If you ask God to heal you and others, help you make the right decisions, and save people who are not Christians, etc., God will hear you. He won't necessarily answer prayers that aren't according to His will. First John 5:14 explains this, "And this is the confidence that we have in him, that, if we ask any thing according to his will, he heareth us:"

So, what if we are not totally sure that God will answer our prayers? The Lord has revealed to me a very simple and effective way to be sure. Many times each day, we sit in chairs and do not even worry if they will be able to hold us without falling apart and dropping us to the floor. The same kind of worry-free faith can literally be used when we ask God to heal us and others, help us make the right decisions, and save people who are not Christians.

For example, if your friend has cancer, and you want Jesus to heal him, you can imagine that the cancer is the chair you are sitting in. You have faith (are confident) that the chair is not going to fall apart while you are sitting in it, and since the cancer is the same part of the chair you know will not fall apart while you are sitting in it, you believe that Jesus will heal your friend of cancer. Since you believe the chair is not going to fall apart, that is all the faith you need. Since the cancer and the chair are the same thing, your only job is to believe that the chair is **not** going to fall apart while you are sitting in it, and tell this to God. As a result, your friend can be healed of cancer by Jesus' healing power (Matthew 21:18-22). Another example that can be used is imagining that Jesus, in His all-powerful and perfect glory, is standing next to the person who is ill with His hand placed on them. Then, imagine that Jesus' power begins at His heart and surges through His arm and enters the ill person and radiates throughout their body and blasts the illness out of them.)

The people in Acts 5:12-16 had this same kind of faith, because they believed if Peter's shadow would pass over the sick, they would be healed. Acts 5:12-16 says, "And by the hands of the apostles were many signs and wonders wrought among the people; (and they were all with one accord in Solomon's porch. And of the rest durst no man join himself to them: but the people magnified them. And believers were the more added to the Lord, multitudes both of men and women.) Insomuch that they brought forth the sick into the streets, and laid *them* on beds and couches, that at the least the shadow of Peter passing by might overshadow some of them. There came also a multitude *out* of the cities round about unto Jerusalem, bringing sick folks, and them which were vexed with unclean spirits: and they were healed every one."

The Parable of the Persistent Widow in Luke 18:1-8 teaches that we should pray until we are satisfied that God has answered our prayer. If you have the kind of faith that has been mentioned in this chapter when you ask God to heal and save people, you will obey this teaching.

However, if you are a Christian, but you have sinned and have not asked God to forgive you for that sin, God will not answer your prayers until you have asked God to forgive you for saying something sinful, thinking something sinful, doing something sinful, desiring something sinful, or not saying or doing something the Holy Spirit urged you to say or do. You should also ask God to forgive you for sinning in ways you didn't realize you have sinned. Another point is described in Matthew 5:23-24, which deals with apologizing to people we have sinned against.

These concepts are taught in Psalm 66:18, "If I regard iniquity in my heart, the Lord will not hear me:" In addition, you should have a desire to obey God (do what He wants you to do) if you want to have your prayers answered (Hebrews 5:7-8). Lastly, husbands who don't treat their wives as they should have answers to their prayers hindered (see 1 Peter 3:7).

Despite the advice given in this chapter, Romans 8:26-27 explains that these strategies may not always work, and it says, "Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities **(The Holy Spirit helps Christians with their problems, and the next note explains how He does this.)**: for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered. **(Christians ask God for help, but the Holy Spirit does the successful work of asking God to fix the problems God wants to fix, and He asks Him with the correct words.)** And he that searcheth the hearts knoweth what is the mind of the Spirit, because he maketh intercession for the saints according to the will of God. **(When Christians pray, they obviously should know that their prayers aren't always answered. This happens because it isn't God's will. (That's not what God wants to happen.) Although, the Holy Spirit knows exactly what God wants to happen in Christians' lives, and He asks God to allow these things to happen. As a result and because God knows the Holy Spirit's heart and understands what He prays, God answers His prayers. The final result is that Christians get the help that God wanted to give. Christians only have certain prayers answered, because these are the prayers that God wanted to answer. However, the Holy Spirit takes the prayers that He knows God doesn't want to answer and changes them to prayers He knows God will answer.)**

In conclusion, if you have never prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, you need to believe that you will become a Christian when you pray or make a decision to do that, so please follow chapter 41 of this book.

If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you are not **sure** you are really a Christian, please follow chapter 41 of this book. Hebrews 11:6 says, " But without faith *it is* impossible to please *him*: for he that cometh to God must believe that he is, and *that* he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him." Matthew 21:18-22, 1 John 5:14, and Hebrews 11:1 are similar verses.

## Chapter 38

### CAN SALVATION BE LOST?

The theme for this chapter is based on Romans 10:13 which says, “For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.” Two different groups of people are misled on what this verse means.

One group seems to claim that if someone prays or makes a decision to get saved (calls upon the name of the Lord), they will go to heaven, even if there is little or no evidence that person has really been born again (2 Corinthians 5:17). The people in this group say things such as, “Everyone who prays to become saved will go to heaven, if not, God has lied.” Not only is that disrespectful, but that is also very wrong. Much of this book biblically reveals the error in this theology. Also, see the 12<sup>th</sup> and 13<sup>th</sup> indented paragraphs of chapter 1 of this book, beginning with this sentence – “The apostle Paul stated two verses on how to obtain salvation that use the title ‘Lord’ in Acts 16:31 and Romans 10:9, and they both mean the same thing etymologically, contextually, and historically (and that is “God who rules”).”

The other group seems to believe that if someone prays or makes a decision to get saved (calls upon the name of the Lord), they are saved, but if they sin on purpose (Hebrews 10:26) or sin by not saying or doing what the Holy Spirit urges them to say or do (James 4:17), they have lost their salvation. They need to (call upon the name of the Lord) again in order to be saved again. When a Christian sins on purpose and doesn’t do what the Holy Spirit leads them to say or do (Romans 8:14), they are making serious mistakes, but if that Christian feels really bad about it and wants God to forgive them (Revelation 3:19), that may be evidence they are truly saved. (Please see chapter 10 of this book for more information.) This group overlooks 1 John 2:19 which says, “They went out from us, but they were not of us; for if they had been of us, they would *no doubt* have continued with us: but *they went out*, that they might be made manifest that they were not all of us.” If the people John was describing were really saved in the first place, they wouldn’t have left the Christian faith. Chapter 16 of this book sheds more light on this. This also solves Romans 11:17-22, where it seems that those who no longer obey, love, or trust that Jesus is their Savior, have lost their salvation – They weren’t saved in the first place. In 1 Corinthians 15:30-34, while

addressing those who had accepted Jesus as their Savior, Paul explains that, due to their unwillingness to turn from their sins, they didn't know God at all (were never Christians in the first place). This group now needs to consider 1 Corinthians 1:8-9 (Who shall also confirm you unto the end, *that ye may be* blameless in the day of our Lord Jesus Christ. God *is* faithful, by whom ye were called unto the fellowship of his Son Jesus Christ our Lord.) and Jude 1:24 (Now unto him that is able to keep you from falling, and to present *you* faultless before the presence of his glory with exceeding joy...)

Notice that both examples (paragraphs two and three of this chapter) do not mention that if someone is not willing to repent (which basically means the same thing as being willing to follow Jesus and allowing Him to become the Lord of their life – see chapter 1 of this book), their heart is not prepared to receive Jesus. (Please see chapters 16 and 8 of this book.) Similarly, they look past Luke 18:18-25 (The Rich Young Ruler) and John 2:23-25 which says, “Now when he was in Jerusalem at the passover, in the feast *day*, many believed in his name, when they saw the miracles which he did. But Jesus did not commit himself unto them, because he knew all *men*, And needed not that any should testify of man: for he knew what was in man.”

When someone thinks they have lost their salvation because they have sinned and call upon the name of the Lord quickly, and a second later are on a mission to keep their salvation through their own efforts, needs to know this is wrong. If this describes you, please follow chapter 9 of this book. Christians should never stop depending on Jesus' work on the cross to erase their sins and let them into heaven (Hebrews 3:6).

Any group is incorrect when they claim that someone has added to the gospel when they urge a sinner to be willing to repent, and if they are willing to begin living that way after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian, they are ready to believe and be saved (see chapters 1-9 and 16 of this book). The people who added to the gospel were the Judaizers, who believed that someone had to have faith in Jesus but also be circumcised, keep the Ten Commandments, and keep the Law of Moses in order to go to heaven. Also, if someone claims that “after” someone follows Jesus or “after” they do good works they are saved, they would be adding to the gospel. But if someone (Christian or non-Christian) adds to the gospel, they can be forgiven (Matthew 12:31), and it's possible for true Christians to become confused as to how people can become Christians and give people false information: This happened to the Galatians in Galatians 5:7-10,

A verse that people described in paragraph three and I seemingly agree on is Matthew 24:13, “But he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved.” I believe this verse, when compared with the rest of this chapter, means that someone can pray or make a decision to become a Christian, but if they begin to live the Christian lifestyle and later permanently abandon that lifestyle, that proves they wasn’t saved in the first place (see chapter 16 of this book – The Parable of the Sower). The difference is that they believe when a Christian gives up living the Christian lifestyle, they lose their salvation, and they need to call upon the name of the Lord (Romans 10:13) again to be saved again.

When somebody witnesses to a sinner and tells them if they want to be saved, they just need to call upon the name of the Lord (Romans 10:13), they don't know how prepared or unprepared the sinner's heart is (unlike Jesus). People won't become Christians if their hearts aren't prepared (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of this book). There definitely is a possibility that their hearts are prepared, but we are not able to read people’s hearts like Jesus did while He was on earth. For example, Jesus didn’t witness to everyone the same way, because He was able to read their hearts and knew how prepared their hearts were. He seemed to make it much harder for the Rich Young Ruler to be saved (Luke 18:18-25) than He did for Zacchaeus (Luke 19:1-10). Notice that all Jesus said to Zacchaeus was, “Zacchaeus, make haste, and come down; for to day I must abide at thy house.” As a result, he made haste, and came down, and received him joyfully (Luke 19:6) and said, “Behold, Lord, the half of my goods I give to the poor; and if I have taken any thing from any man by false accusation, I restore *him* fourfold.” (Luke 19:8). Luke 19:6,8 proves that Zacchaeus had been saved because Luke 19:9-10 says, “And Jesus said unto him, This day is salvation come to this house, forsomuch as he also is a son of Abraham. For the Son of man is come to seek and to save that which was lost.”

Therefore, we shouldn’t just tell people to call upon the name of the Lord without encouraging them to be willing to follow Jesus, and if they are willing to begin living that way after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian, they are ready to trust Jesus’ death on the cross and His shed blood to erase their sins and let them into heaven and believe He arose from the dead (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of this book). Although, when a Christian corrects someone, for example, who has (only called upon the name of the Lord) and tells them they have lost their salvation because they are not following Jesus, and the person calls upon the name of the

Lord in order to get saved again, they could actually become saved this time, because they counted the cost (realized what kind of lifestyle they will have to live and know there is no turning back) before they called upon the name of the Lord. Being willing to follow (imitate and obey) Jesus doesn't always mean being willing to become homeless and go town to town in order to preach and teach. (See the 15<sup>th</sup> indented paragraph of chapter 5 of this book, beginning with this sentence, "In many churches, discipleship is not encouraged.")

I have attended services in which people have come forward to get saved after the message, but the message that was given didn't seem to mention repentance or discipleship. When I felt lead by the Holy Spirit to encourage these people after the service and hand them a card that explained discipleship, one person gave me a funny look, and another person looked surprised and frightened as if to ask, "Now that I'm a Christian, I have to do something?" Second Peter 2:21 states, "For it had been better for them not to have known the way of righteousness, than, after they have known *it*, to turn from the holy commandment delivered unto them."

So, are there instances in the Bible where people lost their salvation?

In John 17:12 Jesus said, "While I was with them in the world, I kept them in thy name: those that thou gavest me I have kept, and none of them is lost, but the son of perdition; that the scripture might be fulfilled." Everyone who has truly been saved has gone to heaven or will go to heaven when they leave this world. Although, it seems that Judas, who was the son of perdition, was the only person in history who was saved and lost his salvation. According to John 17:12, this had to happen so that the scripture might be fulfilled. John 13:18-19 supports this, "I speak not of you all: I know whom I have chosen: but that the scripture may be fulfilled, He that eateth bread with me hath lifted up his heel against me. Now I tell you before it come, that, when it is come to pass, ye may believe that I am *he*." **If Judas lost his salvation, he was the only one to have ever lost it. According to Jesus, no one else will lose their salvation, but it's very possible for a person to pray or make a decision to become a Christian and not go to heaven because they were never truly saved after they prayed or made a decision to become a Christian (explained in this book).**

Also, it seems that Demas lost his salvation, but he was never saved in the first place either (see chapter 16 of this book). Esau is another person who seemingly lost his salvation, but in this situation it may seem that he was unable to get his salvation back. Hebrews 12:16-17 says, "Lest

there *be* any fornicator, or profane person, as Esau, who for one morsel of meat sold his birthright. For ye know how that afterward, when he would have inherited the blessing, he was rejected: for he found no place of repentance, though he sought it carefully with tears.” Clearly, if someone is a fornicator or a profane person, they can be forgiven. Esau was unable to get his birthright back, but that didn’t have anything to do with his salvation. If you have read and understood chapter 36 of this book, you will know that if someone seeks repentance, especially if they seek repentance carefully with tears as Esau did (Hebrews 12:17), they are definitely able to stay saved or become saved, and those things prove that their heart hasn’t become too hard like the Pharisees’ hearts in Matthew 12:22-32.

First Corinthians 9:24–27 seems to be evidence that someone can lose their salvation, and it says, “Know ye not that they which run in a race run all, but one receiveth the prize? So run, that ye may obtain. And every man that striveth for the mastery is temperate in all things. Now they *do it* to obtain a corruptible crown; but we an incorruptible. I therefore so run, not as uncertainly; so fight I, not as one that beateth the air: But I keep under my body, and bring *it* into subjection: lest that by any means, when I have preached to others, I myself should be a castaway.”

It’s possible for someone to pray or make a decision to become a Christian and preach and teach God’s Word as a result, but if they continue to sin and don’t live the way they teach other people to live and never change, they wasn’t a Christian in the first place (1 Corinthians 15:34). But, these verses can have several other meanings: For example, if a pastor in his later years stops trying his best to teach his congregation the Bible the way he used to, he will not be rewarded for those lazy attempts when he faces the judgment seat of Christ (2 Corinthians 5:10; 1 Corinthians 3:5-15), and God will no longer give him opportunities to be effective with his ministry. He would literally become a castaway (put on the shelf). Also, you shouldn't think that you have done everything God has led you to do, and there isn't anything left for you to do. As long as you are alive, your work is never done. God will continue to give you new jobs He wants you to do.

To say that Paul was worried about losing his salvation, contradicts so many of his statements recorded in the New Testament.

## Chapter 39

### REFERENCE CHAPTER

Although you may not have the opportunity for all the following, the following paragraphs give a visual/practical example of what it means to be willing to repent of your sins "from this moment on", be willing to follow (imitate and obey) Jesus "from this moment on", **(Following (imitating and obeying) Jesus doesn't always mean becoming homeless and going town to town in order to preach and teach (explained in the 15th indented paragraph of chapter 5 of this book beginning with this sentence, "In many churches, discipleship is not encouraged.")** and be willing for Jesus to become the Lord of your life "from this moment on". You don't have to try to fix your sinful habits before you become a Christian; you have to be sorry for your sins (2 Corinthians 7:10) and willing to live the type of lifestyle that is getting ready to be explained, and if you are willing to begin living this way after you pray to accept Jesus as your Savior, you are ready to trust Jesus' work on the cross to save you and believe He arose from the dead (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of this book). (There's a big difference.) **A simple summary of how you need to be willing to begin living after you tell God that you trust Jesus' work on the cross to save you and believe He arose from the dead is - when you don't feel that the Lord is wanting you to witness to and/or do other things to help others, you try to spend the rest of your time thinking about the things of God. You will see this pattern beginning with the next paragraph. Jesus also teaches us to count the cost (Luke 14:25-35), so the following outline also helps in doing this.)** Everyone isn't gifted in the same ways (For example, every Christian isn't a Bible teacher.), but the following outline basically covers every area of someone's life, broken down into separate paragraphs. The purpose of this outline isn't necessarily to make a promise to God, but it should give you better understanding. You are telling God the following things:

"I will from this moment on (because I'm thankful for Jesus dying on the cross to erase my sins and for all the things that are waiting for me in heaven, and I love Him more than anything or anyone (Psalm 139:23-24)), try very hard (Luke 13:22-24) to do things such as (while not doing them out of unwanted duty, explained in chapter 40 of this book) -

spend more of my money on things like evangelistic associations, charities, and things for God's purposes instead of entertainment (Technology items can be used and enjoyed for God's purposes, and parts of movies, for example, can be enjoyed in order to glorify God.) and material things in order to show off and/or don't involve God (Matthew 6:19-21), if I have money left over from providing myself with food, clothing, and shelter, I'm willing to give to those who have needs (Luke 12:16-21) (Or, if it is an expensive need where a collection could be taken up, I want to ask the church that I attend or have supported financially to help meet their needs.), give offerings to my church every week (1 Corinthians 16:2);

teach people the Bible (Matthew 28:19), counsel with people who are having problems (Galatians 6:2), encourage others (Hebrews 10:25), correct believers when they sin (Galatians 6:1), and tell people how to become Christians (2 Timothy 4:5) by mouth, through email or social media, and/or by handing out or dropping off tracts that tell people how to become Christians in places like stores or restaurants where people can pick them up;

feed, clothe, and find shelter for the less fortunate, and visit people in hospitals and jails (Matthew 25:35-36; Mark 12:30-31; Titus 3:14);

do acts of kindness for people that will cause them to think good about You (for example - cook, clean, do yard work, help shop, wash cars, fix appliances) (Matthew 5:16; Titus 3:14);

**and when I don't feel that You are wanting me to do those type of things, I will try to do things such as -**

read through the Bible and do what it says to do and don't do what it says not to do (James 1:22);

think about what I've read (Psalm 119:15);

think about things such as a miracle I witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness I saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because You gifted them with that ability, or imagine what will be going on in heaven when I get there, etc. (Philippians 4:8);

pray how Jesus taught in Matthew 6:9-13 by (**admiring You, asking You to forgive me when I sin and try not to do it again** (especially every harsh or idle word I say which reveals the state of my heart (Matthew 12:33-37), and I can do wonderful things for You, but if I'm repeatedly, without remorse, and purposefully not patient (giving up living the Christian lifestyle when people and things are difficult, getting back at people who did wrong to me, and getting upset or flustered when I'm waiting on someone, for example), kind (helping those who have physical, mental, emotional, financial, or spiritual needs I come across), if I envy, brag, or I'm proud of my mind, body, accomplishments, and/or my possessions; think that I'm better and more important than others, rude, insist on my own way, irritable and/or resentful, rejoice at wrongdoing, dwell over/keep count of people's sins against me and hold grudges, have improper or dishonorable behavior, blame people for having evil desires or intentions behind what they do, don't think the best of people, don't try to cover people's faults (This doesn't apply to criminal activity.) and instead expose the wrong they did in order to make them look bad in front of others (The three previous descriptions that are underlined do not apply to possible false teachers – explained in much of chapter 5 of this book.), and don't continue to forgive people who sin against me and expect that You will work everything out right, the good things about me don't count (1 Corinthians 13:1–6). I will also try to rejoice about the good things of someone and won't believe

they did wrong, but I will try to only believe they did wrong if there is impossible to deny evidence. (1 Corinthians 13:7)); **thank You for blessings and difficult circumstances (1 Thessalonians 5:18), and ask You to help me and others);**

talk about You and the Bible with people who will listen (Deuteronomy 6:7), say things that can help and encourage others and isn't perverted, hateful, foul, threatening, argumentative, prideful, rude, trying to make fun of others, etc. (Ephesians 4:29), talk about a miracle I witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness I saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because You gifted them with that ability, how beautiful the weather and scenery is because You made it that way, or what will be going on in heaven when we get there, etc. (Philippians 4:8);

attend church services I am able to attend in order to worship, fellowship, and learn (Hebrews 10:25);

try to do whatever the Holy Spirit gives me thoughts to say and do, no matter how challenging they may be or who or what tries to stop me (James 4:17);

try not to commit sinful actions and thoughts (Luke 13:3), such as lusting (For example, wanting (coveting) another man's wife should be avoided (Matthew 5:27-30), and it also becomes sinful when you plan how and when you will do any form of a sexual act (Ephesians 5:3) with someone you aren't married to (This is evil desire (Colossians 3:5) and impure thoughts (Philippians 4:8).) and carry those acts out (James 1:14-15). When you do these sexual acts, you give in to impurity (1 Thessalonians 4:7; Colossians 3:5) and aren't able to control your body in sanctification and honor (1 Thessalonians 4:3-5). If you aren't able to stop doing sexual acts, you should become married (1 Corinthians 7:9).), getting drunk (1 Corinthians 6:10), practicing homosexuality

(Romans 1:26-28), thinking bad thoughts about others (1 Corinthians 13:1–7), talking bad about others (Romans 1:29), lying, and stealing), and avoid saying, thinking, and doing things I feel might be sinful (Isaiah 30:21; Romans 14:23);

**I'm willing to let Jesus become the Lord of my life (2 Corinthians 4:3-5; Romans 10:9; Acts 2:36) by taking over every "area" of my life from this moment on** - (the way I handle my money, the way I spend my time each day, thoughts, conversations with people who will listen (Deuteronomy 6:7 and see chapter 42 of this book for helpful information), what I watch and listen to (explained in chapter 23 of this book), where I go, try not to avoid witnessing to or helping others because I'm afraid of getting killed or robbed (Matthew 10:28), plans of each day, and future goals).

**I'm willing to let Jesus become the Lord of my life (2 Corinthians 4:3-5; Romans 10:9; Acts 2:36) by taking over every "moment" of my life from this moment on** - Whatever I do (eat, drink, get ready for work or school, drive, shop, play golf, watch a sporting event, or mow the lawn, etc.), I want to try to do it to please You and try to think about things such as what I've read in the Bible (Psalm 119:15); pray (Matthew 6:9-13); think about things such as a miracle I witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness I saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because You gifted them with that ability, or imagine what will be going on in heaven when I get there, etc. (Philippians 4:8) while I eat, drink, get ready for work or school, drive, shop, play golf, watch a sporting event, or mow the lawn, etc. (1 Corinthians 10:31).

I want to think, say, watch, listen to, go where, and do what Jesus wants me to do each day (Mark 8:34).

I "will" try to do these things no matter who or what circumstances try to stop me (Luke 13:24, Luke 9:62).

I want to try to obey Colossians 3:17 by before I say or do something to help someone, I want to tell You that I am doing it for the Lord Jesus, and I thank You for the opportunity. I don't only want to take care of people's needs by witnessing to and/or doing other things to help them, but the reason I want to do these things is so they will think good about You (Matthew 5:16)."

If you're willing to begin living the type of lifestyle that was just explained in the previous paragraphs after you pray the prayer that's featured after the next paragraph, your heart should be prepared to receive Jesus (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of this book), you know what you're getting yourself into (Luke 14:25–35), and you know you aren't going to change your mind and go back to living your old lifestyle (Luke 9:61–62). You don't have to try to memorize and have a perfect understanding of the previous paragraphs before you pray or make a decision to become a Christian, but understand that you need to be willing to live a new lifestyle. (Sometimes life will be amazing and sometimes difficult, but nothing compares to what's waiting in heaven.)

Now, you're ready to tell God that you trust Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven, and you believe He arose from the dead. Please tell God the following –

**Heavenly Father, I am a sinner and am sorry. Please forgive me for sinning. I am willing to quit displaying bad actions, having bad thoughts, and doing what I used to do that You do not like. I believe the following things: I believe Jesus was nailed to the cross, You took all my sins (past, present, and future) and placed them on Jesus, Jesus became guilty for every sin, You punished Him for every sin, after He was punished, shed His blood, and died - I believe my sins were erased! I trust Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase my sins and let me into heaven. I believe He arose from the dead. I confess Jesus as the Lord of my life. In Jesus' Name, Amen.**

After you have accepted Jesus as your Savior, you need to tell someone about it (Matthew 12:8-9). Besides, they might want to become a Christian too. Tell a good Christian church that you became a Christian, and tell them you want to be baptized and publically let people know that you identify with Christ.

Also, the long outline you just read will be very helpful in teaching you how to live the Christian lifestyle each day, so please become familiar with it.

Weeks, months, and years after you have trusted Jesus' shed blood to erase your sins and believed He arose from the dead, you should "Examine yourselves, whether ye be in the faith; prove your own selves. Know ye not your own selves, how that Jesus Christ is in you, except ye be reprobates (not really saved)?" (2 Corinthians 13:5). In addition to having confidence that your sins are forgiven, if you try to and are increasingly able to live the way the previous paragraphs explained, you will have examined yourself, and you will have passed the test! Many very important Bible verses will apply to you if you are living that way. Knowing you are going to heaven is the most comforting thought someone can have. Many believe they are Christians but really aren't. Their lifestyles don't align with verses in the Bible that prove someone is a Christian. When the Bible says, "Examine yourselves, whether ye be in the faith;" and "Ye shall know them by their fruits.," it isn't asking us if we have said a prayer to believe in Jesus. We receive evidence we are saved because we have major changes in the way we think and live. Yes, there are people who basically claim that if you say a prayer one time to get saved, you shouldn't doubt your salvation, even if there is little or no change in the way you live throughout your life. How could they tell others that and ignore 2 Corinthians 5:17? The following is a list of important Bible verses you will have accomplished, so look these verses up:

1 John 2:3-11; Matthew 7:12-27; Hebrews 10:26-29; Luke 14:16-35; Colossians 3:1-25; Colossians 4:1-2,5-6; Ephesians 5:15-17; Ephesians 4:30; 1 John 4:13; Matthew 6:12-15; John 14:15,23-24; James 1:12; 2 Corinthians 5:14-17; Revelation 3:15-16,19-21; Revelation 3:21; John 15:1-6; Luke 13:3; Luke 6:46-48; Acts 10:36; Romans 10:9-10; Luke 9:23-26; Galatians 2:20; Romans 14:7-9; 1 Corinthians 15:31; Philippians 2:12-13; James 2:14-26; Deuteronomy 6:4-7; Matthew 10:28; Isaiah 26:3; 1 Timothy 5:6; Matthew 24:13; Romans 8:6; Romans 12:1; Luke

17:26–33; 2 Corinthians 7:9,10; Luke 16:16; Matthew 6:33; 1 Timothy 6:12; Hebrews 13:5; Titus 1:16; Romans 2:6–10; 2 Thessalonians 1:7–9; Matthew 3:8; Revelation 21:7

## Chapter 40

### NO UNWANTED DUTY

If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc.), but you haven't been living the way this chapter is getting ready to explain, please follow chapter 10 of this book.

This book has many goals, but three of its major goals are to explain how to become a Christian, how to know you're really a Christian, and how to live the Christian lifestyle (see chapter 39 of this book). The problem is; however, you can decide that you will live the Christian lifestyle, but you may not enjoy living it. Someone can do all the things in chapter 39 of this book, but if they do them in unwanted duty, their heart isn't in the right place. Psalm 139:23-24 declares, "Search me, O God, and know my heart: try me, and know my thoughts: And see if *there be any* wicked way in me, and lead me in the way everlasting." Romans 14:17-18 also explains that the only way Christians can please God when they serve Jesus is when they do it with joy in the Holy Spirit. Waking up each morning and knowing what is expected of you may seem dreadful. You may wake up and say to yourself, "Alright, I need to pray, read the Bible, and witness to as many people as possible, then I can relax and have fun." Or, maybe you have prayed or made a decision to become a Christian, but you know that you enjoy watching TV and using the internet, etc. more than reading the Bible and helping others. You then grudgingly say to yourself, "Well, I guess I need to start enjoying reading the Bible and helping others more than watching TV and using the internet."

There are many different things people enjoy and look forward to doing each day, for example watching TV and using the internet. (Although, you will see that these things can be used to worship God as well.) No one has to ask or beg them to do those things, because they are truly interested in them. That's what they want to do, so they freely do them. So, how does a Christian become excited and have a desire to live the Christian lifestyle (Chapter 39 of this book gives an example of the Christian lifestyle.) each day the way they do while watching TV and using the internet, etc.? The following paragraphs seek to answer this question.

What would happen if a billionaire becomes your friend and decides to give you \$50 million if you will help advertise his business and be on your best behavior while you advertise it? Like most people, you probably would be so excited about getting that much money, that advertising his business and being on your best behavior while you advertise it would be very enjoyable instead of something done out of unwanted duty, you probably would thank him over and over, think well of him throughout each day, and go to work advertising for him every day with a big smile on your face.

Alright, think about this, and this isn't make believe; this is reality - **God wants to be your friend and will give you eternal life (which means forever) in heaven. The Bible teaches that heaven is more perfect than anything we have ever seen, heard, or imagined (1 Corinthians 2:9). In heaven, you will never have another trial (Revelation 21:4), nothing will break or wear out (Matthew 6:19-20), and everything about yourself will be perfect (Philippians 3:21). There isn't any amount of money or scientific breakthrough that will come close to giving you any of those things!** So, like the billionaire in the previous example who wants to give you \$50 million if you will help advertise his business and be on your best behavior while you advertise it, God wants something from you, and chapter 39 of this book explains it.

Again, most people probably would be so excited about getting \$50 million from a billionaire friend, that advertising his business and being on their best behavior while they advertise it would be very enjoyable instead of something done out of unwanted duty. They probably would thank him over and over, think well of him throughout each day, and go to work advertising for him every day with a big smile on their face.

How much more would most people enjoy waking up each day and basically doing the same job, but for a different boss (God) and looking forward to receiving far more than \$50 million? The Christian lifestyle basically involves advertising Jesus. The way you do this is when you don't feel that the Lord is wanting you to witness to and/or do other things to help others, you try to spend the rest of your time thinking about the things of God and being on your best behavior (see chapter 39 of this book). When you realize these things, it is very hard to live the Christian lifestyle in unwanted duty or by hurrying to witness, do acts of kindness, and study the Bible, etc. so all your "chores" will be done before you can have fun.

Also, for example, not every Christian is gifted with the ability to teach the Bible. God has gifted them in other ways. These Christians can use the talents God has gifted them with, and they can literally work for God. They may not earn money, but their rewards are waiting for them in heaven. Unlike earthly rewards, these rewards are perfect and will never break or wear out. Christians can do the following for people without charging them any money: cutting their hair, cooking for them, fixing their computers, and doing their taxes, etc. Christians also have the responsibility to take good care of what God has given them out of appreciation and respect (be good stewards), such as their homes. To compare this paragraph with the previous points that have been made in this chapter, Christians can do all these things with great gladness instead of unwanted duty!

It is good to stay busy witnessing to and/or doing other things to help others, but if you don't spend very much time studying the Bible, praying, and thinking about things such as a miracle you witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness you saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because God gifted them with that ability, or imagining what will be going on in heaven when you get there, etc. (Philippians 4:8), you have left your first love, who is Jesus (see Revelation 2:2-7). If this describes you, please follow Jesus' instructions in verse 5 by repenting and doing the first works. (Ask God to forgive you for this, and try to make sure you don't leave out quite time with the Lord.)

Another important point is that all Christians are not wired the same. For example, some Christians aren't as blessed with the ability to understand what they have studied in the Bible as certain other Christians. Expecting Christians to study the Bible all day, even if they aren't very blessed with the ability to learn what they have studied, isn't a good idea. God can be worshiped in other ways. Christians can do things such as watch sports, if the reason they watch is to enjoy God and thank and appreciate Him for gifting the athletes with such amazing ability (Philippians 4:8), enjoy Christian programs with preaching and singing and TV shows that show different parts of the world's natural beauties and animals that Jesus made (John 1:1-4), watch the news and ask God to help the people in the news stories and their families, spend time outdoors thinking about and appreciating Jesus' workmanship (Philippians 4:8), and imagine what heaven is like (Philippians 4:8).

## Chapter 41

### SALVATION/WITNESSING REFERENCE

#### How To Make It To Heaven

Many claim they don't believe in God or the Bible. They may also claim that Jesus isn't the only way to heaven. The following is a section from Dr. Roy B. Zuck's pamphlet "Is the Bible True?" "No book other than the Bible has ever given precise predictions of future events (prophecies) hundreds of years in advance, predictions that were fulfilled exactly. Far from vague generalities or general guesses like those of fortunetellers, the prophecies in Scripture contain explicit details which no human could possibly devise on his own. Imagine trying to come up with the name, ancestry, birthplace, and kind of death for a person who would be born in AD 2800. That would be humanly impossible! Only God could make such predictions and see them carried out perfectly. But that is exactly what we have in the Bible. Jesus' identity, name, birthplace, triumphal entry, betrayal, suffering, death, and burial-all were foretold in the Old Testament seven hundred years before He was born. If only 48 prophecies about a person were fulfilled, the odds would be 1 in  $10^{157}$ . That's a one followed by 157 zeros! And Jesus fulfilled more than 300 prophecies!"

That is overwhelming evidence for those who claim they don't believe.

**The following outline will tell you how you can go to heaven when you leave this world -**

God created you, loves you, and wants you to live in heaven with Him after you leave this world. However, there is a big problem that blocks everyone from entering heaven the way we are. This problem is sin (saying, thinking, and doing things that God hates). Romans 3:23 says, "For all have sinned and come short of the glory of God." God is holy and can't even look at sin (Isaiah 59:2), so there is no way He will allow people with sin to enter heaven. God is not only separated

from sin, but being who He is, He has to judge and punish sin. This means He has the right to judge and send sinners to hell for doing what He hates—sinning.

Although, He loves us and made a perfect plan for us to have our sins erased so we could go to heaven, and as a result, heaven wouldn't be defiled by our sin. This truly wonderful plan involved His Son, Jesus Christ, who came to earth to rescue us from our sins. Jesus not only healed large crowds and was the greatest preacher and teacher in history, but He also allowed Himself to be taken captive, put on trial, and nailed to a cross by people who didn't believe He was the Son of God. The devil (Satan) thought he had won the battle, but this was God's plan to bring lost people into His kingdom. When people sinned during Old Testament times, they had their sins temporarily erased through animal sacrifices, and the animals had to be spotless. The innocent animal would take the punishment and death the person deserved. But God needed a perfect and final sacrifice that would permanently erase sins. Since Jesus never sinned and was perfectly innocent (symbolizing a spotless animal), His blood was the only sacrifice that God could use to make this happen.

While Jesus was on the cross, God took our sins (past, present, and future) and placed them on Jesus, who became guilty for every sin. "All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all." (Isaiah 53:6).

Then, God punished Him for every sin. Isaiah 53:5 says, "But he *was* wounded for our transgressions, *he was* bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace *was* upon him; and with his stripes we are healed."

After Jesus was punished, bled, and died, God's wrath toward sin was satisfied (Isaiah 53:10-11 proclaims, "Yet it pleased the LORD to bruise him; he hath put *him* to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see *his* seed, he shall prolong *his* days, and the pleasure of the LORD shall prosper in his hand. He shall see of the travail of his soul, *and* shall be satisfied: by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities."), and every sin was erased by Jesus' shed blood – "And from Jesus Christ, *who is* the faithful witness, *and* the first begotten of the dead, and the prince of the kings of the earth. Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood," (Revelation 1:5). First Peter

1:18-19 also states, “Forasmuch as ye know that ye were not redeemed with corruptible things, *as* silver and gold, from your vain conversation *received* by tradition from your fathers; But with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot:”

The Good News for us is that if we are ready to begin living a brand-new lifestyle after we believe our sins were erased after Jesus was punished for them, shed His blood, and died, we will go to heaven - “Whom God hath set forth *to be* a propitiation through faith in his blood ...” (Romans 3:25). Isaiah 1:18 adds, “Come now, and let us reason together, saith the LORD: though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they be red like crimson, they shall be as wool.”

We all deserve to pay the penalty for our sins against God (who is so holy, that He can’t even look at sin), but Jesus took the punishment we deserved and freely gave us His righteousness (as if we had never sinned) in exchange. Second Corinthians 5:21 declares, “For he hath made him *to be* sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.”

Then, three days later Jesus arose from the dead to prove that our sins are paid for, which means we can go to heaven when we leave this world - “And if Christ be not raised, your faith *is* vain; ye are yet in your sins.” (1 Corinthians 15:17).

Those are great facts to believe; however, if you aren’t sorry for (2 Corinthians 7:10) and willing to repent of your sins, aren’t willing to begin following Jesus after you pray or make a decision to become a Christian, and aren’t willing for Jesus to become the Lord of your life after you pray or make a decision to become a Christian, your heart isn’t prepared to receive Jesus, even though you believe He died on the cross to erase your sins (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of the free pdf file book featured at this website – [www.areyousureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areyousureyouaresaved.com)). If you read chapter 1 of the free pdf file book featured at this website – [www.areyousureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areyousureyouaresaved.com) you will see that being willing to repent, being willing to follow Jesus, and being willing for Jesus to become the Lord of your life basically have the same meaning.

A perfect example of repentance in the Bible was when the apostle Paul was witnessing to king Agrippa in Acts 26:19-20. These verses say, “Whereupon, O king Agrippa, I was not disobedient unto the heavenly vision: But shewed first unto them of Damascus, and at Jerusalem,

and throughout all the coasts of Judaea, and then to the Gentiles, that they should repent and turn to God, and do works meet for repentance.” If someone truly repents and turns to God (changes, with God’s help, and begins to think and live the way God wants them to think and live), they will begin to do good works. (These are things such as: giving money to those who have needs (Luke 12:16-21), teaching people the Bible (Matthew 28:19), counseling with people who are having problems (Galatians 6:2), encouraging others (Hebrews 10:25), correcting believers when they sin (Galatians 6:1), and telling people how to become Christians (2 Timothy 4:5) by mouth, through email or social media, and/or by handing out or dropping off tracts that explain how to become a Christian in places like stores or restaurants where people can pick them up; feeding, clothing, and providing shelter and financial help for the less fortunate, and visiting people in hospitals and jails (Matthew 25:35-36; Mark 12:30-31; Titus 3:14); doing acts of kindness for people that will cause them to think good about God (for example - cooking, cleaning, doing yard work, helping shop, washing cars, fixing appliances) (Matthew 5:16; Titus 3:14).) One way someone can know if they have really received salvation is if they begin to do good works (James 2:17). Another way to explain this is that people must be willing to begin doing good works (following Jesus) after they accept Jesus as their Savior. I promise you, a major part of following Jesus is doing good works. While Jesus was on earth, He caused people to praise and think good about God by helping others (doing good works), and when He wasn't doing that, His mind was on the things of His Father. (See chapter 39 of the free pdf file book featured at this website – [www.areyousureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areyousureyouaresaved.com) for an example of what following this pattern looks like.) This is how someone needs to be consciously or unconsciously willing to begin living after they accept Jesus as their Savior. (If you read the 6<sup>th</sup> paragraph of chapter 2 of the free pdf file book featured at this website – [www.areyousureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areyousureyouaresaved.com) you will see that someone can be unconsciously willing to begin following Jesus after they accept Him as their Savior and be prepared to become a Christian, but in the New Testament we see examples of people who consciously were not willing to follow Jesus “from that moment on and for the rest of their lives”. As a result, the people who turned away from Him gave up their chance to receive salvation at that time.) **Jesus repeatedly drove thousands away from heaven, because they were not willing to begin following (imitating and obeying) Him. (This is explained in chapters 6 and 7 of the free pdf file book featured at this website – [www.areyousureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areyousureyouaresaved.com))** Notice in Acts

26:19-20, Paul not only witnessed this way to king Agrippa, but to people in Damascus, Jerusalem, throughout all the coasts of Judaea, and then to the Gentiles.

Similar verses are Acts 20:20-21 where Paul said, "*And* how I kept back nothing that was profitable *unto you*, but have shewed you, and have taught you publickly, and from house to house, Testifying both to the Jews, and also to the Greeks, repentance toward God, and faith toward our Lord Jesus Christ." When someone repents toward God, they are obviously willing to quit sinning on purpose after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian, because God hates sin so much that He can't even look at it (Isaiah 59:2). If someone is willing to begin living this way after they pray or make a decision to become a Christian, they are ready to become a Christian by letting God know that they have faith in the Lord Jesus Christ. People are aware of sinful actions (for example - having sex before marriage (Galatians 5:19), getting drunk (1 Corinthians 6:10), practicing homosexuality (Romans 1:26-28), talking bad about others (Romans 1:29), lying, and stealing), but they also must be willing to change the way they spend their time each day and their thoughts that aren't centered on the things God.

These topics are discussed in more detail at this website - <http://chriswaug5.wix.com/nocontridiction>

Although you may not have the opportunity for all the following things, the following paragraphs give a visual/practical example of what it means to be willing to repent of your sins "from this moment on", be willing to follow (imitate and obey) Jesus "from this moment on" (Following (imitating and obeying) Jesus doesn't always mean becoming homeless and going town to town in order to preach and teach (explained in the 15th indented paragraph of chapter 5 of the free pdf file book featured at this website – [www.areasureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areasureyouaresaved.com) beginning with this sentence, "In many churches, discipleship is not encouraged."), and be willing for Jesus to become the Lord of your life "from this moment on". You don't have to try to fix your sinful habits before you become a Christian; you have to be sorry for your sins (2 Corinthians 7:10) and willing to live the type of lifestyle that is getting ready to be explained, and if you are willing to begin living this way after you pray to accept Jesus as your Savior, you are ready to trust Jesus' work on the cross to save you and believe He arose from the dead (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of the free pdf file book featured at this website - [www.areasureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areasureyouaresaved.com)). (There's a

big difference.) **A simple summary of how you need to be willing to begin living after you tell God that you trust Jesus' work on the cross to save you and believe He arose from the dead is - when you don't feel that the Lord is wanting you to witness to and/or do other things to help others, you try to spend the rest of your time thinking about the things of God. You will see this pattern beginning with the next paragraph. Jesus also teaches us to count the cost (Luke 14:25–35), so the following outline also helps in doing this.)** Everyone isn't gifted in the same ways (For example, every Christian isn't a Bible teacher.), but the following outline basically covers every area of someone's life, broken down into separate paragraphs. The purpose of this outline isn't necessarily to make a promise to God, but it should give you better understanding. You are telling God the following things:

"I will from this moment on (because I'm thankful for Jesus dying on the cross to erase my sins and for all the things that are waiting for me in heaven, and I love Him more than anything or anyone (Psalm 139:23-24)), try very hard (Luke 13:22-24) to do things such as (while not doing them out of unwanted duty, explained in chapter 40 of the free pdf file book featured at this website - [www.areasureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areasureyouaresaved.com)) -

spend more of my money on things like evangelistic associations, charities, and things for God's purposes instead of entertainment (Technology items can be used and enjoyed for God's purposes, and parts of movies, for example, can be enjoyed in order to glorify God.) and material things in order to show off and/or don't involve God (Matthew 6:19-21), if I have money left over from providing myself with food, clothing, and shelter, I'm willing to give to those who have needs (Luke 12:16-21) (Or, if it is an expensive need where a collection could be taken up, I want to ask the church that I attend or have supported financially to help meet their needs.), give offerings to my church every week (1 Corinthians 16:2);

teach people the Bible (Matthew 28:19), counsel with people who are having problems (Galatians 6:2), encourage others (Hebrews 10:25), correct believers when they sin (Galatians 6:1), and tell people how to become Christians (2 Timothy 4:5) by mouth, through email or social media, and/or

by handing out or dropping off tracts that tell people how to become Christians in places like stores or restaurants where people can pick them up;

feed, clothe, and find shelter for the less fortunate, and visit people in hospitals and jails (Matthew 25:35-36; Mark 12:30-31; Titus 3:14);

do acts of kindness for people that will cause them to think good about You (for example - cook, clean, do yard work, help shop, wash cars, fix appliances) (Matthew 5:16; Titus 3:14);

**and when I don't feel that You are wanting me to do those type of things, I will try to do things such as -**

read through the Bible and do what it says to do and don't do what it says not to do (James 1:22);

think about what I've read (Psalm 119:15);

think about things such as a miracle I witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness I saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because You gifted them with that ability, or imagine what will be going on in heaven when I get there, etc. (Philippians 4:8);

pray how Jesus taught in Matthew 6:9-13 by (**admiring You, asking You to forgive me when I sin and try not to do it again** (especially every harsh or idle word I say which reveals the state of

my heart (Matthew 12:33-37), and I can do wonderful things for You, but if I'm repeatedly, without remorse, and purposefully not patient (giving up living the Christian lifestyle when people and things are difficult, getting back at people who did wrong to me, and getting upset or flustered when I'm waiting on someone, for example), kind (helping those who have physical, mental, emotional, financial, or spiritual needs I come across), if I envy, brag, or I'm proud of my mind, body, accomplishments, and/or my possessions; think that I'm better and more important than others, rude, insist on my own way, irritable and/or resentful, rejoice at wrongdoing, dwell over/keep count of people's sins against me and hold grudges, have improper or dishonorable behavior, blame people for having evil desires or intentions behind what they do, don't think the best of people, don't try to cover people's faults (This doesn't apply to criminal activity.) and instead expose the wrong they did in order to make them look bad in front of others (The three previous descriptions that are underlined do not apply to possible false teachers – explained in much of chapter 5 of the free pdf file book featured at this website - [www.areasureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areasureyouaresaved.com)), and don't continue to forgive people who sin against me and expect that You will work everything out right, the good things about me don't count (1 Corinthians 13:1–6). I will also try to rejoice about the good things of someone and won't believe they did wrong, but I will try to only believe they did wrong if there is impossible to deny evidence. (1 Corinthians 13:7)); **thank You for blessings and difficult circumstances (1 Thessalonians 5:18), and ask You to help me and others);**

talk about You and the Bible with people who will listen (Deuteronomy 6:7), say things that can help and encourage others and isn't perverted, hateful, foul, threatening, argumentative, prideful, rude, trying to make fun of others, etc. (Ephesians 4:29), talk about a miracle I witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness I saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because You gifted them with that ability, how beautiful the weather and scenery is because You made it that way, or what will be going on in heaven when we get there, etc. (Philippians 4:8);

attend church services I am able to attend in order to worship, fellowship, and learn (Hebrews 10:25);

try to do whatever the Holy Spirit gives me thoughts to say and do, no matter how challenging they may be or who or what tries to stop me (James 4:17);

try not to commit sinful actions and thoughts (Luke 13:3), such as lusting (For example, wanting (coveting) another man's wife should be avoided (Matthew 5:27-30), and it also becomes sinful when you plan how and when you will do any form of a sexual act (Ephesians 5:3) with someone you aren't married to (This is evil desire (Colossians 3:5) and impure thoughts (Philippians 4:8).) and carry those acts out (James 1:14-15). When you do these sexual acts, you give in to impurity (1 Thessalonians 4:7; Colossians 3:5) and aren't able to control your body in sanctification and honor (1 Thessalonians 4:3-5). If you aren't able to stop doing sexual acts, you should become married (1 Corinthians 7:9).), getting drunk (1 Corinthians 6:10), practicing homosexuality (Romans 1:26-28), thinking bad thoughts about others (1 Corinthians 13:1-7), talking bad about others (Romans 1:29), lying, and stealing), and avoid saying, thinking, and doing things I feel might be sinful (Isaiah 30:21; Romans 14:23);

**I'm willing to let Jesus become the Lord of my life (2 Corinthians 4:3-5; Romans 10:9; Acts 2:36) by taking over every "area" of my life from this moment on - (the way I handle my money, the way I spend my time each day, thoughts, conversations with people who will listen (Deuteronomy 6:7 and see chapter 42 of the free pdf file book featured at this website – [www.areasureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areasureyouaresaved.com)), what I watch and listen to (explained in chapter 23 of this book), where I go, try not to avoid witnessing to or helping others because I'm afraid of getting killed or robbed (Matthew 10:28), plans of each day, and future goals).**

**I'm willing to let Jesus become the Lord of my life (2 Corinthians 4:3-5; Romans 10:9; Acts 2:36) by taking over every "moment" of my life from this moment on** - Whatever I do (eat, drink, get ready for work or school, drive, shop, play golf, watch a sporting event, or mow the lawn, etc.), I want to try to do it to please You and try to think about things such as what I've read in the Bible (Psalm 119:15); pray (Matthew 6:9-13); think about things such as a miracle I witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness I saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because You gifted them with that ability, or imagine what will be going on in heaven when I get there, etc. (Philippians 4:8) while I eat, drink, get ready for work or school, drive, shop, play golf, watch a sporting event, or mow the lawn, etc. (1 Corinthians 10:31).

I want to think, say, watch, listen to, go where, and do what Jesus wants me to do each day (Mark 8:34).

I "will" try to do these things no matter who or what circumstances try to stop me (Luke 13:24, Luke 9:62).

I want to try to obey Colossians 3:17 by before I say or do something to help someone, I want to tell You that I am doing it for the Lord Jesus, and I thank You for the opportunity. I don't only want to take care of people's needs by witnessing to and/or doing other things to help them, but the reason I want to do these things is so they will think good about You (Matthew 5:16)."

If you're willing to begin living the type of lifestyle that was just explained in the previous paragraphs after you pray the prayer that's featured after the next paragraph, your heart should be prepared to receive Jesus (explained in chapters 16 and 8 of the free pdf file book featured at this website - [www.areasureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areasureyouaresaved.com)), you know what you're getting yourself into (Luke 14:25-35), and you know you aren't going to change your mind and go back to living your old lifestyle (Luke 9:61-62). You don't have to try to memorize and have a perfect understanding of

the previous paragraphs before you pray or make a decision to become a Christian, but understand that you need to be willing to live a new lifestyle. (Sometimes life will be amazing and sometimes difficult, but nothing compares to what's waiting in heaven.)

Now, you're ready to tell God that you trust Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven, and you believe He arose from the dead. Please pray the following prayer or a prayer like it –

**Heavenly Father, I am a sinner and am sorry. Please forgive me for sinning. I am willing to quit displaying bad actions, having bad thoughts, and doing what I used to do that You do not like. I believe the following things: I believe Jesus was nailed to the cross, You took all my sins (past, present, and future) and placed them on Jesus, Jesus became guilty for every sin, You punished Him for every sin, after He was punished, shed His blood, and died - I believe my sins were erased! I trust Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase my sins and let me into heaven. I believe He arose from the dead. I confess Jesus as the Lord of my life. In Jesus' Name, Amen.**

After you have accepted Jesus as your Savior, you need to tell someone about it (Matthew 12:8-9). Besides, they might want to become a Christian too. Tell a good Christian church that you became a Christian, and tell them you want to be baptized and publically let people know that you identify with Christ.

Also, the long outline you just read will be very helpful in teaching you how to live the Christian lifestyle each day, so please become familiar with it.

Weeks, months, and years after you have trusted Jesus' shed blood to erase your sins and believed He arose from the dead, you should "Examine yourselves, whether ye be in the faith; prove your own selves. Know ye not your own selves, how that Jesus Christ is in you, except ye be reprobates (not really saved)?" (2 Corinthians 13:5). In addition to having confidence that your sins are forgiven, if you try to and are increasingly able to live the way the previous paragraphs explained, you will have examined yourself, and you will have passed the test! Many very important Bible verses will apply to you if you are living that way. Knowing you are going to heaven is the most comforting thought someone can have. Many believe they are Christians but

really aren't. Their lifestyles don't align with verses in the Bible that prove someone is a Christian. When the Bible says, "Examine yourselves, whether ye be in the faith;" and "Ye shall know them by their fruits.", it isn't asking us if we have said a prayer to believe in Jesus. We receive evidence we are saved because we have major changes in the way we think and live. Yes, there are people who basically claim that if you say a prayer one time to get saved, you shouldn't doubt your salvation, even if there is little or no change in the way you live throughout your life. How could they tell others that and ignore 2 Corinthians 5:17? The following is a list of important Bible verses you will have accomplished, so look these verses up:

1 John 2:3-11; Matthew 7:12-27; Hebrews 10:26-29; Luke 14:16-35; Colossians 3:1-25; Colossians 4:1-2,5-6; Ephesians 5:15-17; Ephesians 4:30; 1 John 4:13; Matthew 6:12-15; John 14:15,23-24; James 1:12; 2 Corinthians 5:14-17; Revelation 3:15-16,19-21; Revelation 3:21; John 15:1-6; Luke 13:3; Luke 6:46-48; Acts 10:36; Romans 10:9-10; Luke 9:23-26; Galatians 2:20; Romans 14:7-9; 1 Corinthians 15:31; Philippians 2:12-13; James 2:14-26; Deuteronomy 6:4-7; Matthew 10:28; Isaiah 26:3; 1 Timothy 5:6; Matthew 24:13; Romans 8:6; Romans 12:1; Luke 17:26-33; 2 Corinthians 7:9,10; Luke 16:16; Matthew 6:33; 1 Timothy 6:12; Hebrews 13:5; Titus 1:16; Romans 2:6-10; 2 Thessalonians 1:7-9; Matthew 3:8; Revelation 21:7

If you're able to have access to the internet in the future, please study the free pdf file book featured at this website – ([www.areasureyouaresaved.com](http://www.areasureyouaresaved.com)).

## Chapter 42

### REFERENCE CHAPTER 2

After someone becomes a Christian, every area of their life should begin to change over time, and they should begin to live like Jesus lived. First John 4:17 explains, "Herein is our love made perfect, that we may have boldness in the day of judgment: because as he is, so are we in this world." **Instead of being afraid of going to hell, a Christian can boldly have assurance they're going to heaven, because they live like Jesus lived more and more over time (2 Corinthians 3:18 - live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book).** Similar verses are 1 John 2:3-6, "And hereby we do know that we know him, if we keep his commandments. He that saith, I know him (**says they are a Christian**), and keepeth not his commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him. But whoso keepeth his word, in him verily is the love of God perfected: hereby know we that we are in him. He that saith he abideth (**This word means to remain or stay with. In this case, a Christian continues to follow Jesus (imitate and obey/walk even as he walked) for the rest of their life (live a lifestyle similar to the one explained in chapter 39 of this book). Someone who believes they can go to heaven because they believe in Jesus, but knows they aren't going to follow Jesus for the rest of their life (abide in Him), needs to know that it doesn't work that way (Matthew 10:38).**) in him ought himself also so to walk, even as he walked."

So, if a Christian is supposed to try to imitate Jesus' life while He was on earth, this includes conversations. If you're like me, you probably wonder how this is possible. Jesus knew everything about God and His Word, and His conversations were always centered on them. It's difficult enough to think of ways to talk about the Bible all day, especially if the person you are talking with isn't perfectly knowledgeable about the Bible. But, theology isn't the only topic God expects us to talk and think about each day.

Philippians 4:8 instructs, " Finally, brethren, whatsoever things are true, whatsoever things *are* honest, whatsoever things *are* just, whatsoever things *are* pure, whatsoever things *are* lovely, whatsoever things *are* of good report; if *there be* any virtue, and if *there be* any praise, think on

these things.” This means thinking about things such as a miracle you witnessed or heard of, someone who got saved, some act of kindness you saw or heard of, something amazing an athlete did because God gifted them with that ability, imagining what will be going on in heaven when you get there, how nice the flowers, trees, and weather look because God made them that way, etc.

So, if it's right for a Christian to think about those things, it's right for two Christians to discuss them. The key to this is to share this chapter with your Christian friend or family member and for example say, "Whenever we are watching sports and are talking about how awesome an athlete is doing their thing, we are letting God know that we are rejoicing because of how wonderfully He gifted the athletes." Whenever you are watching or going to a car show and are talking about how awesome the cars' features are, as in how wonderfully God gifted the car makers with such skill and smarts, you are letting God know that you are appreciating this fact. Whatever you are talking about that's the result of God's workmanship, remind God (who already knows) and the Christian you are talking with that you are having a conversation about God, **(the way Jesus had conversations when He was on earth)**. **The result is that Christians will be able to follow Jesus by the conversations they have.**

(If you have asked Jesus into your heart, believed that Jesus is your Savior, or trusted Jesus' death on the cross and His shed blood to erase your sins and let you into heaven and believed He arose from the dead, etc., but you haven't been living the way this chapter has explained, ask God to forgive you for this. Then, "from this moment on" try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) not to fail in this way again.)

If in the future you fail to live the way this chapter has explained, ask God to forgive you for that again. Then, "from that moment on" try your absolute best (explained in Revelation 3:19) not to fail again. (Continue to follow this pattern every time you fail to live this way.) (Please follow chapter 10 of this book for more information.)

## AUTHOR BIOGRAPHY

Chris Waugh's purpose in life is simply evangelism. Chris is passionate about witnessing, and his goals are to see people receive Christ. However, Chris isn't an effective speaker, and the Lord has revealed to him that he can be more effective through writing and reach more people that way. Even though Chris hasn't stopped verbally witnessing, Chris took that advice and wrote this book with the guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Not only is Chris passionate about evangelism, but it doesn't take much reading into this book to understand that Chris has spent much time defending the message of evangelism. This hostility has seemingly come more from those within the church than from non-believers. These battles have been intense, but without them, millions wouldn't have the opportunity to finally fully grasp and comprehend the Bible's most important and crucial topics.

Fierce opponents of this book's theology have been determined to stop this book's message from getting out. Even, a supposed Christian publishing company, who Chris was formerly published with, vandalized a shorter version of this book and left it that way until he luckily realized what happened and was able to get it taken off the market.

The Lord has also lead Chris to begin writing the book entitled *Extremely Important Bible Verses Explained*. The goal of this book is to clearly teach how someone can obey passages of the Bible, beginning at Matthew and ending at Revelation, by using the same unique outline/format presented in this book. The passages that will be covered are ones that explain how someone can become a Christian, live the Christian lifestyle, and know if they have really become a Christian. This gives readers the opportunity to receive overly clear and complete explanations of life-changing Bible verses that aren't covered in this book. (Also, <http://chriswaug5.wix.com/sermons> features these Scripture explanations as well, along with informative Sunday morning messages.) As Chris continues to write this, you can see his progress for free at this website - <http://chriswaug5.wix.com/newtestament>

Be sure to check out and pass on to others the typed sermons and Bible teachings by Chris at this website - <http://chriswaug5.wix.com/sermons>